A Study of the Mongol Khamnigan Spoken in Northeastern Mongolia

Yu Wonsoo
<Errata, Corrigenda>

*A Study of the Mongol Khamnigan Spoken in Northeastern Mongolia*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>page</th>
<th>line</th>
<th>error</th>
<th>read as</th>
<th>cf.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>hundred</td>
<td>move to the left just under <em>juu</em> to become <em>two hundred</em></td>
<td>sentence (4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>over</td>
<td>move to the left just under <em>garee</em></td>
<td>sentence (4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>household-having</td>
<td>move to the left just under <em>ůrk ayl-tee</em></td>
<td>sentence (4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>bül</td>
<td>move to the right just after <em>am</em> to become <em>am bül</em></td>
<td>sentence (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>how</td>
<td>move to the right just before <em>many</em> to become <em>how many COL-REF-2POL</em></td>
<td>sentence (3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A Study of the Mongol Khamnigan Spoken in Northeastern Mongolia
"This work was supported by the Korea Research Foundation Grant funded by the Korean Government (MOEHRD, Basic Research Promotion Fund)"
(KRF-2006-322-A00054)
A STUDY OF THE MONGOL KHAMNIGAN SPOKEN IN NORTHEASTERN MONGOLIA

YU Wonsoo

Seoul National University Press
Contents

Preface  vii
Abbreviations  xi

1. General Introduction  1
   1.1 The Khamnigan people of Mongolia and their linguistic situation  1
   1.2 The Khamnigan people of China and Russia  4

2. General description of the fieldwork studies in Khentii aimag, Mongolia  7
   2.1 Participants  7
   2.2 Questionnaire, equipment, and method  7
   2.3 Trip to Khentii aimag  8
      2.3.1 From Ulaanbaatar to Chingisiin Tonoot of Binder sum, Khentii aimag  8
      2.3.2 From Chingisiin Tonoot of Binder sum to Gurvan Nuur of Dadal sum, Khentii aimag  9
   2.4 Consultants  10
      2.4.1 Mrs. Jigmed TSETSEGMAA  10
      2.4.2 Mrs. Luvsangtsereng TSEND-AYUUSH  13
      2.4.3 Mrs. Chultem DARKHAA  14
3. Linguistic description of the Mongol Khamnigan spoken in Northeastern Mongolia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3.1 Phonological description</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.1 Vowels</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.2 Consonants</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.3 Diachronic and synchronic considerations</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2 Morphological description</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.1 Parts of speech</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3 Syntactic description</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.1 Word order</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.2 Conjunctions</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.3 Negation</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.4 Interrogatives</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.5 Passive</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.6 Causative</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Appendix 1. Vocabulary 95
Appendix 2. Basic Conversational Expressions 191
Appendix 3. Data for Grammatical Analysis 215

References 251
Abstract 255
Preface

The Mongolic languages team of the Altaic Society of Korea, Researches on Endangered Altaic Languages (henceforth ASK REAL) carried out its fieldwork studies on endangered Mongolic languages and their dialects from September of 2003 to February of 2009. Information is given in the following order: name of the object language (dialect); place of the fieldwork study; date of the fieldwork study.

1. Dagur (Qiqihaer); Meilis Dagur Nationality District, QiQihaer City, Heilongjiang Province, China; 2003. 9. 23.—9. 26.
2. Buryat (Aga Khori); Ulan-Ude; 2004. 4. 22.—4. 23.
   (2-1. Buryat (Khori); Seoul, Korea: 2004. 10. 8., 10. 10.)
3. Ööld (Düükhee/Döchin Tolgoi); Ölziit Sum, Arkhangai Aimag, Mongolia; 2004. 6. 26.
4. Dagur (Tacheng); Tacheng City, Xinjiang Uyghur Autonomous Region; 2004. 10. 18.—10. 21.
5. Khuuchin Barga; Hailaer District, Hunlunbeier City, Inner Mongolia Autonomous Region, China; 2005. 2. 16.—2. 19.
   (6-1. Darkhad; Seoul, Korea; 2007. 6. 23., 6. 28.)
7. Shera Yogur or Eastern Yugur; Hongwansi Town, Sunan Yugu Nationality Autonomous County, China (中國 甘肅省 武南裕
8. Kalmyk (Dörved); Elista City, Kalmyk Republic, Russia; 2006. 4. 18. — 4. 21.
9. Arig Uriankhai; Byarangiin gol, Chandman-Öndör Sum, Khövsgöl Aimag, Mongolia; 2006. 6. 27. — 6. 29.
10. Üüriin Uriankhai; Tsegtseriing üzüür, Tsagaan Üür Sum, Khövsgöl Aimag, Mongolia; 2006. 7. 1. — 7. 3.
11. Bonan (Nianduhu, Tongren); Xining City, Qinghai Province, China (中國 青海省 西寧市); 2006. 8. 19. — 8. 21.
12. Monguor (Minhe); Xining City, Qinghai Province, China (中國 青海省 西寧市); 2006. 8. 23. — 8. 25.
15. Buryat (Tunka); Arshaan Village, Tunkiinskii Raion, Buryat Republic, Russia; 2007. 1. 27. — 1. 28.
16. Buryat (Oka); Arshaan, Tunkiinskii Raion, Buryat Republic, Russia; 2007. 1. 29.
17. Mongolian (Khamnigan); Chingisiin toonot of Binder Sum and Gurvan Nuur of Dadal Sum, Khentii Aimag, Mongolia; 2007. 7. 6. — 7. 11.
18. Buryat (Tsongool); Tashir Village, Selengiinskii Raion, Buryat Republic, Russia; 2007. 8. 3. — 8. 5.
20. Buryat (Bargazaan); Bayangol Village, Barguzin Raion, Buryat Republic, Russia; 2007. 8. 10.
21. Oirat (Hoboksair); Hebukesaier Autonomous County (和布克賽爾蒙古自治縣), Xinjiang Uyghur Autonomous Region, China; 2008. 1. 6. — 1. 8.
22. Oirat (Bortala); Jinghe County (精河縣), Xinjiang Uyghur Autonomous Region, China; 2008. 1. 10.; Urumqi city, Xinjiang Uyghur Autonomous Region, China; 2008. 1. 13. — 1. 14.
23. Oirat (Babaygol); Urumqi City, Xinjiang Uyghur Autonomous Region, China; 2008. 1. 11.—1. 12.
24. Mongolian (Baarin); Huhhot City, Inner Mongolia Autonomous Region, China; 2008. 8. 2.—8. 4.
25. Mongolian (Ordos); Huhhot City, Inner Mongolia Autonomous Region, China; 2008. 8. 5.—8. 7.
27. Dongxiang (Suonan-Daban); Lanzhou City, Gansu Province, China; 2009. 2. 11.—2. 12.
28. Bonan (Jishishan); Linxia City, Gansu Province, China; 2009. 2. 15.—2. 17.
29. Monguor (Huzhu); Linxia City, Gansu Province, China; 2009. 2. 21.—2. 22.


Together with my colleagues, I also published a book Yu et al. (2008c), which is a fieldwork report and linguistic description in English on the Tacheng dialect of the Dagur language. The present work, a fieldwork report and a linguistic description on the language of the Khamnigan people in Khentii aimag of Mongolia, is the second report in the form of a book by myself. Personally, I wish for my next reports on the fieldwork studies of Mongolic languages to follow one after another continually.

Our colleagues in ASK REAL also published their fieldwork studies in English in the form of books as Kim et al. (2008) about Manchu, and Li et al. (2008) about Chulym Turkic. We may expect that these scholars publish their second reports in recent days on other Altaic languages.
Abbreviations

1: Personal possessive suffix or personal ending, the first person
2: Personal possessive suffix or personal ending, the second person
3: Personal possessive suffix or personal ending, the third person
ABL: Ablative
ACC: Accusative
AFF: Affirmative particle
AIM: Verbal noun suffix marking "aim, purpose"
BEN: Benedictive mood, benediction
Bu.: Buryat
C: Consonant
Ch.: Chinese
CM: Causative marker
COL: Collective marker
COM: Comitative, completed aspect
CONC: Converbal concessive, converbal conditional, or concessive particle
CONI: Converbal imperfective
CONM: Converbal modal
CONP: Converbal perfective
COR: Corroborative particle
DIR: Directional
DL: Dative-Locative
EMP: Emphatic aspect marking particle
xii  A Study of the Mongol Khamnigan Spoken in Northeastern Mongolia

EXC: Exclusive
GEN: Genitive
HYYY: 『華夷譯語』 Hua-yi-yi-yu
INC: Inclusive
INS: Instrumental
INT: Intentional mood marker, interjection, or interrogative marker
Ja. : Japanese
Kh.: Khalkha
Ko.: Korean
MM: Middle Mongolian
MUL.: Multitude action, participation
NEG: Negative
ORD: Ordinal
PAS: Past perfective
PER: Permission
PL: Plural
PM: Passive marker
POL: Polite imperative, polite~distant, polite persuasion
PRE: Present imperfective, prescriptive
PRO: Progressive marker
REC: Reciprocal marker
REF: Reflexive possessive
Ru.: Russian
Sa.: Sanskrit
SG: Singular
SH: The Secret History of the Mongols
SPE: Speculative marker
Ti.: Tibetan
V: Vowel
VNA: Verbal noun actor
VNF: Verbal noun future imperfective
VNH: Verbal noun habitual
VNI: Verbal noun past imperfective
VNP: Verbal noun perfective or verbal noun progressive present
VOL: Voluntative mood, volition
WM: Written Mongolian
1

General Introduction

1.1 The Khamnigan people of Mongolia and their linguistic situation

There are a small number of people in Mongolia who identify themselves as Khamnigan xun [qʰamŋiŋ kʰun] and their language also as Khamnigan ayalguu [qʰamŋiŋ ajilɡo:]. According to the National Statistical Office of Mongolia (2010.06.29), there were 574 people in Mongolia who identified themselves as the Khamnigan (Хамниган in Standard Khalkha) in the 2000 census for housing and population. Mongol Khamnigans live mostly in certain sums of Khentii, Dornod, Selenge aimag mostly with the Buryats in Mongolia.

The Khamnigans are thought to be Evenki descendants, who speak a distinctive Mongolic language which shares many linguistic features with Khalkha, Buryat, and Written Mongolian.¹ It seems that the Mongol Khamnigans had been bilinguals of Evenki and Mongolian for many centuries in the past, and they had totally lost their Evenki proficiency during two or three

---

¹ Janhunen (2005: 5-9) has the similar opinion. He stated that “Linguistically, however, Khamnigan Mongol is a well-defined language, which can only be recognized as a separate member of the Mongolic family.”
generations.

Tungusic elements were still being found in such works of 1950s~1960s on Khamnigan language as U.-Kôhalmi (1959), Mishig (Мишиг, 1962), Rinchen (Ринчен, 1969), even in Shimunek (2009.12.16), who reported at least 8 Evenki vocabularies based on his researches in 2006. However, no Tungusic element is found in our data which has at least 2,700 vocabularies. There is a strong possibility that our survey method was problematic to a certain extent in that we asked questions in Khalkha, and our data are the accumulation of the responses of the consultants to those Khalkha forms. However, the fact that no Tungusic element had popped up for days of question and answers with 2,700 vocabularies and 700 sentences suggest that the loss of the Evenki proficiency has been completed.

Our consultants said that there were Khamnigan, Buryat, Khalkha people, etc. but no such thing as Khamnigan Buryat. They emphasized the differences saying, “Khamnigan is Khamnigan, Buryat is Buryat”. Many important aspects of their lives including adoption, marriage, etc. however, seem to be heavily interwound with the Buryats.

Information about the exact number of the Khamnigan people in Mongolia and the portion of the Khamnigan speakers among them are unavailable. Wikipedia (2009.08.18) says there are 300 Khamnigan households, but its source remains untold. It is said that the Khamnigans are living mainly in Binder sum and Dadal sum of Kentii aimag, Mongolia. The numbers of the Khamnigan population of these two sums are unavailable either. According to Wikipedia (2009.08.18), populations of Binder and Dadal Sums

2) Shimunek (2009) thought following words are from Evenkii: vtee ‘son’, sunaaji ‘daughter’, zumbaraa ‘ground squirrel’, zembii ‘large hut’, bygtvne ‘mosquito’, kypee ‘reindeer hide’, ictig ‘a type of boots’, deregene ‘hyper, rambunctious’. However, consultants did not pronounce these words in our study. It seems that his consultants, mostly in their 70s or 80s, remember few Evenki words. Neither were they able to speak Evenki.
are 3,784 and 2,667 respectively as of 2008. However, it seems there is no way to figure out the size of the three ethnic groups. The languages of the Buryats and the Khamnigans were already assimilated to the Khalkha, the biggest and the strongest dialect not only in the aimag but in the whole country.

In standard Mongolian of Mongolia, which happens to be Khalkha, it is written хамниган (khamnigan) meaning ‘those who have Manchu-Tungus language’. In standard Buryat of Buryatia, which happens to be Khorii, it is written хамнаган (khamnagan)~хамниган (khamnigan) meaning ‘Evenki, Tungus’. According to Atwood (2004: 171-172), Janhunen (2005: 9-10), and other scholars, the Khamnigans seem to have been a part of the Evenkis. However, our consultants did not know any words of Tungusic origin which were introduced in Rinchen (Ринчен, 1969).

According to Wikipedia, we may classify the Khamnigans of today’s Mongolia into two groups: Khamnigans who were in today’s territory of Mongolia before the Russian revolution (1917), and Khamnigans who came after the Russian revolution (1918).

According to Tsoloо (Цолоо, 1987: 99-111), Khamnigan in Mongolia is regarded as one of the Buryat dialects, and Buryat is regarded as one of the three major Mongolian dialects together with Khalkha and Oirat as summarized in the table below.
Assumed position of the Khamnigan in Mongolia\(^3\)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Language</th>
<th>Dialect</th>
<th>Sub-dialect</th>
<th>Branch dialect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mongolian</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Khalkha</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Oirat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buryat</td>
<td>Onon-Ulz River</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Khamnigan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Aga-Khori</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Kudar (or Khüder)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Barga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Selenge-Üür River</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tsongool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Tunkhin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Sanaga</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1.2 The Khamnigan people of China and Russia

It seems that the term Khamnigan Mongol has two meanings for Janhunen (2005: 9-13): (1) those Khamnigans who speak Mongolic language, (2) the Mongolic language which the Khamnigans are speaking. According to him, their language Khamnigan Mongol remains a vigorous community language among the emigrant Khamnigan group in the Mergel basin, Hulunbeier City of Inner Mongolia. He claims that there are over 1,500 Khamnigan Mongol speakers in the Mergel basin. He also adds that there are less than 200 Khamnigans in the Imin basin, and their language is being rapidly assimilated to the local dialects of Mongol proper and Buryat.

\(^3\) Here ‘sub-dialect’ and ‘branch dialect’ are translations of Mongolian terms аман аялгүү (aman ayalguu ‘oral dialect’) and салбар аман аялгүү (salbar aman ayalguu ‘branch oral dialect’) respectively.
Again according to Janhunen (2005), the Khamnigan have been found living especially within Nerchinsk Okrug (region) of Chita Oblast. Information on the size of the Khamnigan population and the number of Khamnigan speakers among them in Russia seems to be unavailable.
General description of the fieldwork studies in Khentii aimag, Mongolia

2.1 Participants

The Mongolic language team of ASK REAL team is made of Wonsoo YU (overall process, transcription), Wookyong SHIN (video recording), Jaeyoung CHOI (audio recording) from Seoul National University and Tömörbaatar PÜREVSÜREN (questioning), Prof. Luvsandorj BOLD (Director) from Institute of Language and Literature, Mongolian Academy of Sciences.

2.2 Questionnaire, equipment, and method

We prepared a questionnaire to ask 2,734 words, 345 conversational expressions, and 384 sentences and constructions about grammatical structure. It was prepared in Khalkha. The consultants were requested to answer twice for each entry.
A Marantz 670 recorder was used for voice recording, and a DSR-PDX10 camcorder for video recording. An AKG C420 headset microphone was used to record the consultants, while the questioner used a AT831b pin microphone.

2.3 Trip to Khentii aimag

2.3.1 From Ulaanbaatar to Chingisiin Tonoot of Binder sum, Khentii aimag

Korean participants left Incheon International Airport at 22:15 (delayed 2 hours and 10 minutes from schedule) of July 5, 2007 by OZ331 (Korean Air), and landed at Chingis International Airport at 00:22 (delayed 1 hour and 57 minutes from schedule) the next day. It was 01:10 when the Korean participants were finally received by their Mongolian colleagues.

The Korean participants spent the night at a hotel called Zaluuchuud at 43 Baga Toiruu, Suhbaatar düüreg (district), Ulaanbaatar, Mongolia. At 09:30 the next morning, Koreans left the hotel in two 4-wheel-drives, one Mitsubishi 94 and one Land Cruiser 95, together with their Mongolian colleagues. We changed US dollars into Mongolian tugruks, bought 22 bottles of water, and then picked up the cook of the Chingisiin Tonoot campsite who came to Ulaanbaatar to purchase vegetables. It was 11:45 on July 6 when we were on the eastern limit of Ulaanbaatar City, and when the drivers finally decided that their cars were ready for the long distance journey.

The team arrived at the Chingisiin Tonoot tourist camp site, Binder sum of Khentii aimag at 20:40 on July 6. According to the odometer of our cars, we were 426 kilometers away from the eastern limit of Ulaanbaatar City. Temperature fluctuated between 14°C ~ 34°C in the car. On the way, we spent 55 minutes for lunch.
at the Khaan-Mörön restaurant of Jargaltkhaan sum of Khentii aimag, another 40 minutes for photographing at Arshaan khad of Batshireet sum of the same aimag.

2.3.2 From Chingisiin Tonoot of Binder sum to Gurvan Nuur of Dadal sum, Khentii aimag

We left Chingisiin Tonoot, Binder at 09:15 on July 9, 2007 and arrived at Gurvan Nuur campsite of Dadal sum at 14:35. The odometer was at 447 kilometers at the departure and 561 kilometers at arrival. On the way, we took 45 minutes to cross the Onon River at Onongiin garam ‘crossing of the Onon River’ or Onongiin Biirwaaz (< Ru. Перевоз ‘ferry’), another 55 minutes for lunch.
2.4 Consultants

2.4.1 Mrs. Jigmed TSETSEGMAA

We met Mrs. Tsetsegmaa at 12:15 on July 7, 2007 at the Chingiisiin Tonoot tourist campsite. She was accompanied by Mr. Amgalan, a Khamnigan young man who guided her.

Her own identification in her mother tongue is Jigmediin Tsətsəgmaa of Noyon Duligaad clan of Khamnigan tribe of Mongol nation [mongol undustʰən qʰamnegəŋ jastʰən nojɔn tɔliŋjaːt ɔmɔqtʰə tɔikmedin tʃʰətsʰəymaː].

However, she pronounced her own name in multiple ways. Mostly Cəcəgmaa which is the most Khamniganish, but also Cecegmaa (Khalkhaish) or Səcəgmaa, too.

Picture 2. Mrs. Jigmed TSETSEGMAA with team
She was born in 1957 in Tsagaan Nuur of Binder sum from a Khamnigan father and a (Borjigin) Khalkha mother from Tsagaan Ovoo, north Khentii. She was still living in her birth place. She lived in Ulaanbaatar in the 7th and 8th grades while attending a specialized middle school for painting and sculpture. Then she returned and stayed at home in Tsagaan Nuur, until she married at the age of 20 with a young Khamnigan man who kidnapped her. Her husband was a man of good nature in every sense, and her family had known him before the marriage because he had grown up in the neighborhood. If he had not kidnapped her, but rather proposed the marriage through the matchmaker as the Khalkha folks usually did, her father would have never allowed it because it was not the marriage custom of the Khamnigans. At 24, she moved to Ulaanbaatar with her husband.

After moving Mrs. Tsetsegmaa lived in Ulaanbaatar for 17 years working as a needle worker. She returned to Tsagaan Nuur upon her husband’s death in 1997, which was 10 years before our fieldwork research. She had five children and two grandchildren at the time of our fieldwork, and used to take care of the cattle with her children. One of her two daughters was a student majoring in fine art and fine art education at the National University of Mongolia at the time of our visiting.

The survey through the questionnaire was made from 14:10 to 18:10 on July 7, and from 09:20 to 18:50 on July 8, 2007. We asked questions in Khalka Mongolian and she replied twice in her Khamnigan to every item requested. As a result, we recorded 2,651 words, 345 conversational expressions, and 386 sentences and constructions for the grammatical structure. We also recorded the self introduction of the consultant and her explanations of Khamnigan customs and the proprieties.

She believed that the languages of her 80 year old father back home and other elders were real Khamnigan, while her language had been consistently exposed to Khalkha Mongolian. Linguistic material from Mrs. Tsetsegmaa, however, is the main object of discussion in this work because she was the best Khamnigan
speaker among those who were able to identify their own precious time to be with us.

2.4.1.1 Mr. Luvsang ERDENETSOGT

Around 21:00 on July 7, 2007, after dinner, Mr. Erdenetsogt, a middle aged Khamnigan, visited Prof. Bold. Soon after Prof. L. Bold, Mrs. Tsetsegmaa, Mr. Erdenetsogt, and I had a pleasant conversation. Mr. Erdenetsogt and our consultant Mrs. Tsetsegmaa had the same teacher (bagsh, a shaman they highly trusted) who was once invited to Korea for a service to pray for the rain. While in Korea, the shaman found out and was astonished that the terms and the names of many pieces of equipment used in shaman rituals in Korean are so alike to those of the Khamnigans. They said that their teacher thought that the Khamnigans and the Koreans must have been related to each other in ancient times.

Mr. Erdenetsogt said that he was one of the consultants and cooperators for the fieldwork study of Prof. Yu. Munkh-Amgalan of the National University of Mongolia and Mr. Andrew Shimunek from Indiana University, America. Mr. Erdenetsogt added that the two scholars had visited Binder sum over many years during the summer. Mr. Erdenetsogt understood their study as an anthropological linguistic one. Regrettably Mr. Erdenetsogt was so busy training his horses for the racing in naadam (national festival) that he was unable to be our consultant.

Mr. Erdenetsogt estimated that the Buryats are the biggest in number, the Khamnigans second, and the Khalkhas third among 4,100 population of the Binder sum. Mrs. Tsetsegmaa and Mr. Erdenetsogt did not know the number of the Khamnigans in their sum. They repeatedly said that the Khamnigans must have been one big ethnic group (yastan ‘those who have the same bone’) in olden times, because there had used to be 32 clans (omok) in the past. They said that there were Khamnigans in Russia, Mongolia (mostly in the aimags of Dornod, Selenge, Khentii), and China. They guessed that the Russian Khamnigans must have preserved
their mother tongue best.

2.4.2 Mrs. Luvsangtsereng TSEND-AYUUSH

She identified herself as Luvsangtserengiin Tsend-Ayuush, of the Sharaid clan, the Khamnigan nation [χα�ύνγκαŋ ʊндʊɛstʰəŋ ʃaреш əмəʁ ti Luβsaŋtserэngiιŋ tθeŋdajəŋ].

Mrs. Tsend-Ayuush was born in 1947 in Khargiyastai, north of the Balj Gol River, which is a tributary of the Onon Gol River in Dadal sum. She was born by Buryat parents whose previous children all died as infants. She knew that her father was a Khori Buryat and her mother was from Barguzin in Buryatia, Russia.

Soon after her birth, her parents committed her to a Khamnigan family whose children were all growing up healthy. When the prearranged one year term was over, the Khamnigan family was

Picture 3. Mrs. Luvsangtsereng TSEND-AYUUSH
so attached to her that they refused to return her to her biological parents. While her Buryat parents were demanding her return, her younger siblings were born and all grew up healthy. At last, her Buryat parents had to accept the status quo. Both her adoptive parents were also from somewhere in Russia.

Upon her graduation from the State College of Teachers (today’s Mongolian State University of Education), Ulaanbaatar, she taught Mongolian language and literature in high schools of Khalkha sums of Khentii aimag for almost 30 years. She retired 10 years ago and returned to the native place of her spouse, Dadal sum. Mrs. Tsend-Ayuush assumed her language must have been assimilated to the Khalkha. Her husband, a retired high school teacher, was a Buryat. They had two children and five grandchildren. Their children spoke Khalkha.

Mrs. Tsend-Ayuush said she was one of the consultants of Prof. Yu. Munkh-Amgalan and Mr. Andrew Shimunek in their fieldwork study in July of 2006.

Mrs. Tsend-Ayuush worked with us from 17:10 to 19:00 on July 9, from 11:30 to 17:10 on July 10, 2007. She gave answers for 1,047 words, 345 conversational expressions, and 384 sentences and constructions for grammatical structure.

2.4.3 Mrs. Chultem DARKHAA

Our consultant identified herself as Chultemiing Darkhaa, Baruun Khuuchai clan, Kamnigan nation [χamnɪkaŋ undustəŋ paron χoːsbaŋ emkŋtʰə tʰultʰemɨŋ tarqʰaː].

Mrs. Darkhaa was born in 1945 to a Buryat family in a place called Galttai in Dadal sum. She was adopted by a Khamnigan family when she was three months old. Her husband is also a Khamnigan. They married through bride kidnapping, a tradition of the Khamnigans of the old days. They had 10 children and 28

2) Her clan was introduced as Uliankhai in Shimunek (2006: 31).
General description of the fieldwork studies in Khentii aimag, Mongolia

Mrs. DARKHAA with team

Picture 4. Mrs. DARKHAA with team

grandchildren. She has never been out of Dadal sum. She said that she was one of the consultants of Prof. Yu. Munkh-Amgalan and Mr. Shimunek in summer of 2006.

We got 876 words and 151 conversational expressions from Mrs. Darkhaa. We recorded her life story, explanation on animal husbandry, climate change of Dal sum, etc. Our research started from 10:00 and lasted until 17:00 on July 11, 2007 from which point Mrs. Darkhaa became too tired to continue to participate to our research.
Linguistic description of the Mongol Khamnigan spoken in Northeastern Mongolia

3.1 Phonological description

As mentioned above, Mrs. Tsetsegmaa’s replies to our questions are the main data for linguistic description of the Mongol Khamnigan in this book. When possible and necessary, speeches of Dadal sum consultants Mrs. Tsend-Ayuush and Mrs. Darkhaa are also taken into consideration.

3.1.1 Vowels

Six short vowels /a/, /o/, /u/, /ə/, /i/, seven long vowels /aa/, /oo/, /uu/, /əə/, /üü/, /ee/, /ii/, and four diphthongs /ay/, /oy, /uy/, /üy/ are tentatively proposed as vowel phonemes.

The best description on Khamnigan vowel /a/ might be a near open, near back, unrounded vowel. However, it is rounded very

1) A paper of the same topic was read in Yu (2010a) in Korean at the 2010 Autumn meeting (2010.9.11) of The Korean Association for Central Asian Studies, then revised and rewritten in English.
often as [o] or [u] in many words and sentences, but the context is not so clear.

Vowel /o/ is an open-mid rounded back vowel which is nearest to the IPA’s [ɔ].

Vowel /u/ is a near-close rounded back vowel which is nearest to the IPA’s [o].

Vowel /ü/ in this book is a close central rounded vowel which is nearest to the IPA’s [u].

In most cases the short vowel /ə/ corresponds to the vowels which are transcribed as /e/ in Written Mongolian and Middle Mongolian. It corresponds to the vowels which are usually written as /ə/ both in Khalkha and Buryat.  

There are vowel [e] and [i], which are allophones of Khalkha /e/, in the speech of our consultant. They are transcribed as /e/ in this book, until a better solution is found.

eklaxɔ [ikʰlaxɔ/ʃukʰlaxɔ] # to begin (Kh. эхлэх; Bu. хэлхэ; WM ekilekii)
des daraa [tis tara:] # order (Kh. дэс дараа; Bu. (Cognate word unavailable); WM des daray-a)
ekner nükür [akʰner nukʰur/ekʰner nukʰur] # wife and husband, spouse
ekləəd [ikʰlə:t] # in the beginning, first (Kh. эхлээд; Bu. эхилээд; WM ekileged)

---

2) The Khalkha vowel which is represented by the letter э usually corresponds to the vowel /e/, which has [e] and [i] as allophones. The Buryat vowel which is represented by the same letter э usually corresponds to the vowel /ə/, which has [ə] and [e] as allophones. Yu (2004: 112) regarded the (Aga) Khori Buryat [ə] as the free variant of [e], and both of them as the allophones of the phoneme /e/. Bayinmend (白音門德, 2004: 130-133) who did the research on Khori Buryat in the same ASK REAL fieldwork study found the Buryat э as the mid-high, middle, unrounded vowel (中高，央，展唇元音) not only in the first syllable (F1 452, F2 1557), but also in the second (F1 447, F2 1396), and other syllables as well.
eküün [ikʰuŋ] # puckery, astringent (Kh. эхүүн; Bu. эхүүн³; WM ekegün)
emčilək [emtʰiləkʰ/emtələkʰ] # to treat, to doctor (Kh. эмчлэх; Bu. эмшэлэх; WM emčilekü)
emtilək [emtʰiləkʰ/emtələkʰ] # to treat, to doctor (Kh. эмчлэх; Bu. эмшэлэх; WM emčilekü)
əbderk [əbderk] # to get broken, to be damaged (Kh. эвдрэх; Bu. эбдэрхэ; WM ebderekü)

Vowel [ə] appears occasionally. It is not a allophone of any Khamnigan basic vowel but a allophone of Khalkha /ə/ and, is evidence of the Khalkha influence. It is transcribed as /ö/ until a better solution is found.

Short vowels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Front</th>
<th>Central</th>
<th>Back</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Close</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>ü</td>
<td>u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mid</td>
<td>(e)</td>
<td>æ(ö)</td>
<td>o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open</td>
<td></td>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Long vowels /ee/ and /əə/ are hypothesized as two different phonemes until future research finds examples against the presumption of this paper.

There is room for further consideration of [eː] and [ɛː], which are treated as allophones of long vowel /ee/ in many Khamnigan words. These vowels may be the allophone of diphthong /ay/, /əy/, /oy/, etc., especially in word-final syllables. For example,

buliŋγərtee [peoliŋgjərt'ɔɛː] # turbid, cloudy (Kh. булингартай)
sonirkoltee [sɔniŋk'ɔl'tɛː] # interesting (Kh. сонирхолтой)
əmügtee [əmügtʰɛː] # woman, female

3) эхүүн 'едкий, кислый' in Tsydenjapov (Цыденжапов, 1991: 138) seems to be an error of эхүүн.
Long vowels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Front</th>
<th>Central</th>
<th>Back</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Close</td>
<td>ii</td>
<td>üü</td>
<td>uu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mid</td>
<td>ee</td>
<td>əə(öö)</td>
<td>oo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>aa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ascending diphthongs are presumed not to be present. There is room for further consideration of [y:], a close front rounded long vowel, which is regarded not as an allophone of a certain long vowel but as an allophone of diphthong /üy/ in this book, especially in the word-first syllables.

Diphthongs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Front</th>
<th>Central</th>
<th>Back</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Close</td>
<td>üy</td>
<td></td>
<td>uy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mid</td>
<td>(əy)</td>
<td></td>
<td>oy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ay</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.1.2 Consonants

Labial consonants /b/, /p/, /w/, /m/, dental-alveolar consonants /d/, /t/, /n/, /r/, /l(ɬ)/, alveolar consonants /j/, /c/, /s/, alveolar-palatal consonants /j/, /č/, /š/, palatal consonant /y/, velar consonants /g/, /k/, /x/, /ŋ/ are proposed as consonant phonemes, also tentatively. Gruntov (Грунтов, 2010: 2-3)’s contrast of “Strong : Weak (твердость-мягкость) consonants”, that is “Normal : Palatalized consonants” seems not necessary to presume in the speeches of our consultant.

/b/, /d/, /g/, /j/, /ʃ/ represent unaspirated voiceless consonants while /p/, /t/, /k/, /c/, /č/ represent aspirated voiceless consonants.
Consonant /r/ is realized mostly as flap [ɾ]. However, it alternates with the trill [r] in the same phonological contexts. These two may be regarded as free variants of each other. Flap consonant is chosen as a phoneme but it is transcribed as /r/ for convenience. It does not occur at a word's initial position.

Voiceless dental-alveolar lateral fricative /ɾ/ appears only once at the initial position of a Tibetan loan word. It actually was one of two words which might have been pronounced with the [l] among the 2,700 words in the questionnaire. The other question was the word for a lama, but our consultant chose the word /ɡələŋ/ instead.

ɬagba garigi [ɬaβa qariği] # Wednesday

As Shimuneck (2006: 33) pointed out, the dental-alveolar lateral consonant is pronounced mostly as approximant[l], very seldom as voiced[ɫ] or voiceless[ɾ] fricatives, which are prevalent in Khalkha.

In the three words below, forms with initial [χ] alternate with forms without initial [χ]. The word for 'palm' is the only form among those three which had Middle Monolian initial h-. Therefore, it would be proper to say that the relic of Middle Mongolian h- does not exist in this dialect now.

xagšixa [χakcixä/akcixä] # to contract, to shrink (Kh. арших; Bu. arwa xa; WM ағсиқу)
xalgu~algu [a:lgə/χaləɡə] # palm (Kh. алга; Bu. алъган ; WM алан; MM (SH, HYYY) halagan)
xamalalt [χamaláltʰ/amaláltʰ] # promise (Kh. амлалт; Bu. (Cognate word unavailable); WM amalalta)

There are only two words with initial [w]. One is a Chinese loan word, and the other is a compound word with a Chinese loan word and a native Mongolian word. Stop [p] alternates with fricative [w] when it is used as a word for 'pot'. When used as a word for 'roof tile', our consultant pronounced the initial consonant as a stop sound.
waara~baara # pot (<瓦兒[wär] ‘rooftile’)
waaran ədləl # ceramics (Kh.) (< Ch. 瓦兒[wär] ‘roof tile’ + -n ‘nominal suffix’ + Mo. ədləl ‘goods, ware’
baara # roof tile (<瓦兒[wär] ‘roof tile’)

Consonant table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification</th>
<th>Labial</th>
<th>Dental-Alveolar</th>
<th>Alveolar</th>
<th>Alveolar-Palatal</th>
<th>Palatal</th>
<th>Velar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stop</td>
<td>b, p</td>
<td>d, t</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>g, k</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Affricate</td>
<td></td>
<td>j, c</td>
<td></td>
<td>j, č</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fricarive</td>
<td>(w)</td>
<td>(l)</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>š</td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nasal</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>n</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ŋ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flap</td>
<td></td>
<td>r</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glide</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approximant</td>
<td>l</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.1.3 Diachronic and synchronic considerations

3.1.3.1 Written Mongolian i

As previous studies have mentioned, Written Mongolian i of the initial syllable is mostly maintained in Khamnigan. For example,
činara # quality (Kh. чанар; Bu. шанар; WM činar)
iruul # bottom (Kh. ёроол; Bu. оёор; WM iruγal/iruγar)
nisə # snivel (Kh. нус; Bu. нюха; WM nisu)

However, there are some words in which the vowel i of the initial syllable has been completely assimilated to the vowel of the following syllable. There are also some words which have both assimilated form and unassimilated form. In those cases, some words are more similar to the Khalkha in their phonological forms
Linguistic description of the Mongol Khamnigan spoken in Northeastern Mongolia

while some other words are more similar to the Buryat forms. Also there are some words which resemble the Khalkha and the Buryat form together.

əsgirwa~isgirəə [əskirwa:/iskirə:] # whistle (Kh. искерээ; Bu. эшхэээн; WM iskirege)
gyalaltaku [kjəl-altʰakʰɔ] # to sparkle, to glitter, to gleam (Kh. ɣялалзах; Bu. гилалзаха; WM gilaljaqu)
κəjagaar # border, frontier, boundary (Kh. ɣяэгаар; Bu. хизаар; WM kijagar)
jirgaa~jurgaa # six (Kh. зургаа; Bu. зургаа; WM jirγuγan)
kürəə # a saw (Kh. хөрөө; Bu. хюрөө; WM kiriige);
kimda~kyamda~kyamd [kʰimidɑ/kʰjamdɑ/kʰjamt] # cheap (Kh. хямд; Bu. хямда; WM kimda)
mิงgu~myəgga~myaqga # a thousand (Kh. мянга; Bu. мянга; WM mingγ-a)
maxa~maka~myka~myəka # meat, flesh (Kh. макс; Bu. мяха; WM miq-a)
nəgə # one (Kh. нэг; Bu. нэгэ; WM nige)
šarsan myəka # roast meat (Kh. шарсан макс; Bu. шараахан мясаан; WM sirγasan miq-a)
šibuu~šubuu # bird (Kh. шувуу; Bu. шубуу; WM sibayu)
ilaa # fly (Kh. ялаа; Bu. илаахан; WM ilaγan), however yalaanee üt for maggot

Among the various phonological changes, i > ya/yə is more similar to those of Khalkha in almost all cases. Examples below cover almost all the cases found in the 2,800 words that our consultant pronounced.

yalagdul # defeat (Kh. ялагдал; Bu. илагдал; WM ilagdal)
yalaltu # victory (Kh. ялалт; Bu. илалта; WM ilalta)
yalaxa # to win, to defeat (Kh. ялах; Bu. илаха; WM ilaqu)
yalgaxa # to separate, to distinguish (Kh. ялгах; Bu. илгаха; WM ilγaqu)
yaljarxa # to rot, to decay (Kh. ялзрах; Bu. илзарха; WM iljaraqu)
There are some Khamnigan words with initial [i] when the cognate words of Written Mongolian, Khalkha, and Buryat have vowels other than /i/. Some of them may be understood as one of the Khalkha phenomena: That is /e/ > [i] in the initial syllable. However, the others are not related to this phenomenon. Those peculiar [i] are found mostly after the affricate consonants, occasionally after the nasal consonants,

- čidünjə [ʨʰidündʒə] # match (< Ch. 取燈子[qǔdēngzi]) (Kh. чүдэнз; Bu. (Cognate word unavailable); WM čüdengje)
- čirlə (~šaril) [ʨʰirlə/ɕeril] # corpse, holy relics (< Sa. šarıra corpse, holy relics) (Kh. шарил; Bu. Cognate word unavailable; WM šaril)
- jibšuurku~jübšəərkə # to approve, to approve, to agree to (Kh. зөвшөөрөх; Bu. зүвшөөрхэ; WM jöbsiyerkü)
- jijiluurtee # tough (meat) (Kh. зажлууртай; Bu. Cognate word unavailable); WM jajiluγurtai)
- jijilχa # to chew (Kh. зажлах; Bu. жажалха; WM jajilqu)
- mitraal # material (< Ru. материа́л) (Kh. материал; Bu. материал; WM matyeriyal)
- şiqkay (~siqkay~saŋkay~saŋkay⁴) # China, Chinese (Kh. Шанхай; Bu. Шанхай; WM šangqai)
- šita (~šata) # ladder (Kh. шат; Bu. шата; WM šatun)

The Written Mongolian vowel /i/ of the non-initial syllables is realized as [ja]~[je] in some Khamnigan words. Some words have

---

4) Chinese city (上海[shànghǎi]). Consultant used to say [saŋkʰaŋ] ~[ɕaŋkʰaŋ]~[ɕenkʰaŋ] for Chinese and China. She had also “kyatad [kʰjatʰat]”, a regular Mongolian word for ‘China’ and ‘Chinese’. She called Korea solonggos, a regular Mongolian word for ‘Korea’ and ‘Korean’. As for Japan and Japanese, she used the word samuray.
both forms, that is, a form with the non-initial [i] and another form with [jə]~[je] at the same time. Examples below cover almost all cases in the data.

anyəx̂u # to close the eyes (Kh. аних Bu. аниха WM aniqu)
bakye (∼baki) [pakʰi/pakje] # pincers (Kh. бахъ; Bu. (Cognate word unavailable); WM baki)
baryəx̂u (∼bariyəx̂u) # to build (Kh. барих; Bu. бариха; WM bariqu)\(^5\)
bolyəxo # to stop, to give up (Kh. болих; Bu. болихо; WM boliqu)
gišgyəx̂a (∼gišgeχə) # to step, to tread (Kh. гишгэх; Bu. гэшхэхэ; WM giškikü)
goryəx̂a (∼gorixo) # stream (Kh. горхі; Bu. гопхо; WM yoruq-a/γορικ-α)
kabyərəg # rib (Kh. хавирга; Bu. хабирга; WM qabirγ-a)
kibyəkə [kibjəkə] # to ruminate (Kh. хивэх; Bu. хивэхэ; WM kibekü)
kolyəxo~xolyəxo # to mix (Kh. холих; Bu. холихо; WM qoliqu)
solyəkə # to change (Kh. солих; Bu. холихо; WM soliqu)
soribyə (∼soribi) # scar (Kh. сорви~сорив; Bu. хорбі~хорьбо; WM sorbi)
tabyəx̂u # to put, to place (Kh. тавих; Bu. табиха; WM talbiqu)
tanyəx̂u # to know (Kh. таних; Bu. таниха; WM taniqu)
təbiryəkə~teberyəx̂a # to embrace, to hold in the arms (Kh. тэврэх; Bu. тэбэрихэ; WM teberikü)
xabyərgan sara (∼кабирган сара) # crescent moon, new moon (Kh. хавирган cap; Bu. (Cognate word unavailable); WM qabirγan sara)

Syllable final [i] is maintained in almost all cases. Thus it is similar to Buryat in which unstressed short vowels including /i/ are relatively well preserved, and different from Khalkha in which

\(^5\) It is /barixu/ in ‘to restrain, to hold’. (Kh. барих; Bu. бариха; WM bariqu)
/i/ has been either dropped or reduced to soft sign (зэлээний тэмдэг, в) in most cases. For example,

bəri # bride, daughter in law (Kh. бэр; Bu. бэри; WM beri)
dari # gun powder (Kh. дарь; Bu. дари; WM dari)
düči # forty (Kh. дөч; Bu. дүшэ; WM döči)
surguuli # school (Kh. сургүүл; Bu. хүргүүл; WM surgayuli)
suuri # basis (Kh. сүүр; Bu. үүр; WM sayuri)

3.1.3.2 Written Mongolian k, q and Khamnigan /k/, /x/

Written Mongolian k and q are maintained as stop consonants in most cases. Gantogtokh (Гантогтох, 1988: 1631) maintained that the [k] instead of /x/ in [-back] vowel words was one of the special features of Khamnigan as distinct from the other Buryat dialects. However, in our consultant’s speech, both the [+ back] and [-back] vowel words have the stop /k/. Its allophones [kʰ] and [qʰ] are in complementary distribution, [kʰ] in [-back] vowel words and [qʰ] in [+ back] vowel words, thus it is transcribed as /k/ in this book.

kadaas [qʰata:s] # nail (Kh. хадаас; Bu. хадаан; WM qadayasu)
komool [qʰomol:] # horse dung (Kh. хомоол; Bu. (Cognate word unavailable); WM qomoγol)
kusaka [qʰosakʰa] # to shave (Kh. хусях; Bu. хөгхө; WM qusuqu)
kələkə [kʰələkʰə] # to say, to speak, to tell (Kh. хэлэх; Bu. хэлэхэ; WM kelekü)
küskə [kʰuskʰə] # to want (Kh. хүсэх; Bu. хүсэхэ; WM küsekü)
kibyəkə # to ruminate (Kh. хивэх; Bu. хивэхэ; WM kibekü)

The aspirated voiceless velar consonant of the same word is sometimes pronounced as a stop and sometimes as a fricative both in [+ back] and [-back] vowel words. For example,

xələcəər-kələcəər # negotiation
xüči-küči # power
xügšin xün~kügšin kün # old person
xüüxən karaa # pupil of the eye

The fact that 410 words of the data start with the /k/ and 80 words with /χ/ suggests that the fricativization started not too long ago in Khamnigan, which may also mean that the influence of Khalkha or Buryat on Khamnigan started not too long ago, either.

Although there are only few examples, Written Mongolian /k/ or /q/ are realized as /g/ occasionally. As for /gokirlo/ (harm, damage, loss), it may be explained as the de-aspiration of the initial /k/ by the influence of the aspirated /k/ of the second syllable. However, there is no element in /gilbar/ which may cause the initial de-aspiration. The words for ‘whistle’, ‘to shout’, and ‘to step, to thread’ are similar to the non-aspirated consonants in Khalkha words.

gilbar [kilpär] # simple, easy (Kh. хялбар; Bu. хилбар; WM kilbar)
gokirlo [qəkʰirlo] # harm, damage, loss (Kh. хохирол; Bu. хохирол; WM qokiral)
əsgirwaa~isgirəə [əskirwa:/iskirə:] # whistle (Kh. искэрээ; Bu. эшхэрээн; WM iskirege)
kadgiraχa to shout, to yell (Kh. хаширах; Bu. хаширах; WM qaškiraqu)
gišgyəxə (~gišgexə) # to step, to tread (Kh. гишгэх; Bu. гэшхэхэ; WM giškikü)

3.1.3.3 Written Mongolian d

Written Mongolian d is realized as /d/ (= [t]) in Khamnigan almost all the time. However, it is realized as /s/ occasionally. Some words have both /d/ and /s/ types. Context seems to mostly occur in syllable final (including word final) position but in the cases of ‘first’ and ‘day after tomorrow’ it is the onset consonant of the syllable. There is a similar phenomenon in Buryat, but [s] is not
found exactly in the same position. There is no matching example in Gantogtokh (Гантогтох, 1988)’s Buryat dialect dictionary which has 6,000 entries.

bügs (~bügüd) # all (Kh. бүгд; Bu. бүгэдэ; WM bügüde)
əbüusaka # to be ill (Kh. əвдэх; Bu. үбдэхэ; WM ebedkü)
casaxa # to be full (in one’s stomach) (Kh. үдэх; Bu. садаха; WM çadqu)
gajaas xün # foreigner (Kh. гадaad хүн; Bu. гадaadдын хүн; WM γadayadу kümün)
magasgüy # probably (Kh. магадгүй; Bu. магадгүй; WM mayad ügei)
bayar naasam [pajär na:sám] # festival (Kh. баяр наадам; Bu. [баяр] наадан; WM bayar nayadum)
naasxa # to play (Kh. наадах; Bu. наадаха; WM nayadqu)
нэгэсүгээр~нэгэдүгээр # first (Kh. нэгдүгээр; Bu. нэгэдэгээр; WM nayadqu)
nügəəsər # the day after tomorrow (Kh. нөгөөдөр; Bu. нүгөөдэр; WM nögügedur)
osgon # the youngest child (Kh. отгон; Bu. одхон; WM odqan)
kugas # half (Kh. xarac; Bu. хаад; WM qayas)
oros # Russia (Kh. опоc; Bu. ород; WM oros)

Written Mongolian d is realized as j (= [ts]) in Khamnigan occasionally. For example:

bojol [pɔtɔl, pɔetɔl] # thought, idea, opinion (Kh. бодол; Bu. бодол; WM bodol)
gajaas xün # foreigner (Kh. гадaad хүн; Bu. гадaadдын хүн; WM γadayadу kümün)
kajuura [qʰʌfə:ra] # sickle, scythe (Kh. хадуур; Bu. хажуур ‘scythe’, хадуур ‘sickle’; WM qaduyur ‘sickle’)

3.1.3.4 Written Mongolian s

Written Mongolian s is realized mostly as /s/, and occasionally as /ʃ/ as in Khalkha. Written Mongolian #si# is realized mostly as
#šV#, which means /s/ is palatalized and /i/ is assimilated to the vowel in the following syllable. Occasionally /i/ is assimilated to the vowel in the following syllable without palatalizing /s/. Some words have both palatalized and unpalatalized forms.

dəəlsüülk [təːlsuːlkʰ] # to improve (Kh. дээшлүүлх; Bu. дээшэлүүлхэ; WM degegsilegülkü)

Occasionally /i/ is assimilated to the vowel in the following syllable without palatalizing /s/.

Some words have both palatalized and unpalatalized forms.

dəəlsüülk [təːlsuːlkʰ] # to improve (Kh. дээшлүүлх; Bu. дээшэлүүлхэ; WM degegsilegülkü)

suluun šugam (~šuluun šugam) # straight line (Kh. шулүүн шүгам;
Bu. (Cognate word unavailable); WM silüγun siγum)
suuda # soon (Kh. шүүд; Bu. шүүд; WM siγud)
süüləgə # poem, poetry (Kh. шүлэг; Bu. шүлэг; WM silüγ)
süüləs—sülüs # saliva (Kh. шүлс; Bu. шүлсэ; WM silüs)
sürməs # sinew (Kh. шөрмөс; Bu. шүрбээ; WM sirbüsü)
süüdər # dew (Kh. шүүдэр; Bu. шүүдэр; WM sigüderi)
süükə # to judge, to try (Kh. шүүх; Bu. шүүхэ; WM sigükü)
sütüləgə # piety, faith, worship, religion (Kh. шүтлэг; Bu. шүтэлгэ; WM sitülge)

Although there are only three examples, Written Mongolian /s/ corresponds to Khamnigan /c/ (=[tsʰ]) and /č/ (=[tʃʰ]).

cücsə~cüsə # gall bladder (Kh. цөс; Bu. хүлээ; WM čösö~sösö)
čiluun~čuluun [tʃʰilʊŋ/tʃʰɔluŋŋ] # straight (Kh. шулүүн; Bu. (Cognate word unavailable) WM silüγun)
čumuul~tyəmuul [tʃʰəmu:ɬ/tʃʰəmuul] # mosquito (Kh. шумуул; Bu. шумуул; WM simayul~simuγul)

In the word for ‘mosquito’, /t-/ as well as č corresponds to

6) As a result, it becomes synonymous with the word süüdər # shade, shadow (Kh. сүүдэр; Bu. гүүдэр; WM següder).
Written Mongolian /s/. There is one more example of Khamnigan /t/ which corresponds to Written Mongolian /s/. However, it might be a simple error of our consultant.

ültägələŋ~ürtägələŋ [ultʰäγələŋ, urtʰäγələŋ] # hunger, fasting
(Kh. өлсгөлөн; Bu. үлэсхэлэн; WM ölüskülen)

3.1.3.5 Written Mongolian č

Written Mongolian č is realized mostly as /c/ (=tsʰ)/ or /č(=tɕʰ)/, and occasionally as /ʃ(=ɕ)/. In this respect, Khamnigan is more like Khalkha where it is realized as ў(=tsʰ) or у(=tɕʰ). It is realized as с(=s/) or ү(=ɕ~ʃ) in Buryat. Examples below are Khamnigan /s/ and /ʃ/ which correspond to Written Mongolian č. Some /s/ coexist with /c/ (=tsʰ) in Khamnigan.

Khamnigan words for ‘maternal uncle~mother’s brother’ and ‘maternal aunt~mother’s sister’ are very similar to certain Buryat kinship terms phonologically but the meanings are very different from each other. It might be the case that our consultant was confused in the kinship terms. In Buryat нарса means ‘maternal grandfather’ and нарсхаий/нарса ахай means not ‘wife of maternal uncle’, but ‘maternal uncle’. Consultant used the morpheme nagac in the compound words for maternal relatives, which is exactly same with the Khalkha kinship terms phonologically. For example:

nagac бəригəн # wife of mother’s brother
nagac əcəг~naguc əcəɣ # mother’s father
nagac əкə # mother’s mother
nagac xürgəн аxa # husband of mother’s sister

For a word ‘shirt’, /samca/ and /camca/ coexist. The former is a mixture of Buryat and Khalkha types, while the latter is of Khalkha type. Also for a word meaning ‘to pierce’ Buryat and Khalkha types coexist. Considering the closely related life of the Khamnigans to the Buryats, influence of the Buryat types seems rather insignificant, and far weaker than the influence of the Khalkha types. The Buryat influence seems to have been great in
earlier days, but it is replaced by Khalkha influence now.
nagsa # maternal uncle (Kh. нагаç ах; Bu. нарса ахай; WM
nagaču)
nagsaxay # maternal aunt (Kh. нагаç эгч; Bu. нарса абгай; WM
nagaču egeči)
samca~camca # shirt (Kh. цамц; Bu. самса; WM čamča)
soolxo~čoolxo # to pierce (Kh. цоолох; Bu. соолохо; WM
čоγоллу)
šiγəərey # soon (Kh. чигээрээ; Bu. (Cognate word unavailable); WM
čig-iyer ‘straight’)
šiidəŋ # electric lamp (< Ch. 氣燈[qideng]) (Kh. чийдэн; Bu.
(Cognate word unavailable); WM čiideng)
šiγnee ulaan korkoy # earthworm (Kh. чийгийн улаан хорхой;
Bu. шинг ‘moisture’; WM čigig-un qoruqai ‘earth worm’)
šinaxa~činaxa # to boil (Kh. чанах; Bu. шанаха; WM činaqu)
šukula~čukula # important (Kh. чухал; Bu. шухала; WM
čiqua)
xaşi šelu~kaşi čuluu # jade (Kh. хас чулуу; Bu. (Cognate word
unavailable); WM qas čilayu)

Some examples of Khamnigan /t/ (=[tʰ]) which correspond to
Written Mongolian č are also found. Some words have both /č-/ and
/t-/ type forms. As Yu (2007: 23-24) enumerated quoting previous
studies, Written Mongolian and Middle Mongolian č is realized
as /t/ in Oirad Mongolian dialects (Zakhchin, Torguud, Ööld,
Uriankhai, Myangad, Bayd, Khoton, Dörvöd), Eastern Khalkha
dialect, and some Inner Mongolian dialects (Silüyun köke banner,
Darqan, Eastern Sünid, Alashan). For example,
dotortee kubtas [tʰartʰe: kʰuptas] # lined garments (Kh.
(дотортой) хувцас; Bu. (дотортой) хубсаха; WM (doturtai)
qubčasu)7)
butalaxa [pʰelaχa] # to boil (intransitive) (Kh. бүлэх; Bu.

7) It is the same in /doγüür xubtas/[tʰe: xoptʰas] # upper garment.
When it is simply ‘clothes, garment’, it was pronounced as /kubcas/.
butalgaxa [pɔtʰɛlgaxa] # to boil (transitive) (Kh. буцалгах; Bu. бусалгаха; WM bučalγaqu)
güytəj očko [kuytʰəʃ eʃɛkʰɔ] # to overtake, to catch up with (Kh. гүйцэж очих; Bu. гүйсэж ошох; WM güičejü očiqu)
emtilək [emtʰi:ləkʰ] # to treat, to doctor (Kh. эмчлэх; Bu. эмшэлэх; WM emčilekü) 8)
sarabčutee malagay~sarabdyüte malagay # cap9) (Kh. саравчтай малгай; Bu. нарааша малгай; WM sarabčitai malaγai)

3.1.3.6 Written Mongolian ʃ

Written Mongolian ʃ is realized mostly as a dental-alveolar unaspirated voiceless affricate /ʃ/ (= [ts]) or an alveolar-palatal unaspirated voiceless /ʃ/ (= [tʃ]) in Khamnigan, thus showing no difference from Khalkha. However, there appear [d] or [t] occasionally at the place of Written Mongolian ʃ, although they might be simple pronunciation errors of our consultant.

dorilogo~jorilogo [tɔrilɔkɔ~tsɔrilɔkɔ] # purpose, goal (Kh. зорилго; Bu. зорилгго; WM jorilγ-a)
gyalaltaku [kjalaltʰakʰo] # to shine, to glitter (Kh. гялалзах; Bu. гилалзаха; WM gilaljaqu)

3.1.3.7 Written Mongolian ş

Written Mongolian ş is realized as /ş/ in Khamnigan in almost all

8) ‘Medicine’ was not /em/ but [aŋma] – [am], and ‘doctor’ was not /emč(i)/ but /emč(i)/, /domči/. Doerfer (1985: 70) presented adirga ‘stallion’, ati ‘grandson’, gutin ‘30’, diloga ‘rein’, gudige ‘stomach (of animal)’ as examples of Khamnigan words with ti/di. Our consultant answered three of them with the same words. All three were pronounced as affricate consonants (ajarogo~ajargan ‘stallion’; ači ‘grandson’, guči ‘30’).

9) Word for ‘cow shed, cattle pen’ is sarabči [saraŋçi]. Therefore the -dy-part may have been a simple pronunciation error of our consultant.
cases. It is realized as [d] or [ʧ] occasionally.

- kadgiraxa # to shout, to yell (Kh. хашгирэх; Bu. хашхархэ; WM qaškiraqu)
- čirə~šaril [ʨʰirə/ʧərəl] corpse, holy relics (< Sa. şarîra corpse, holy relics) (Kh. шарил; Bu. (Cognate word unavailable); WM şaril)

3.1.3.8 Unstressed non-initial short vowels and vowel addition

As previous studies have properly pointed out, unstressed non-initial vowels are relatively well preserved in Khamnigan. Furthermore, sometimes vowels, which are not found in Written Mongolian or neighbor dialects, are added. For example:

- arago # means, method, way (Kh. apra [araka]; Bu. apra; WM arγ-a)
- činara # quality (Kh. чанар; Bu. шанар; WM činar)
- baatura # hero (Kh. батар; Bu. батар; WM bayatur)
- bačiməduu~bačimyəduu # impatient, hasty, flustered, worried, confused (Kh. бачимдуу; Bu. башамдуулха ‘to push, to press’; WM bačimdaγu ‘pressing, anxious’)
- baxalajuura [paχalaʃkɔːrɔː] # pharynx (Kh. багалзуур; Bu. бахалжуур~багалзуур; WM baγaljaγur)
- bərigən [pərigəŋ/pərdiŋ] # elder brother’s wife (Kh. бэрэгэн; Bu. бэргэн~бэригэн; WM Bergen)
- dabasaga # (urinary) bladder (Kh. давсар; Bu. (Cognate word unavailable, cyyxa) WM dabasay~dabusang)
- gajura # place (Kh. газар; Bu. газар; WM γajar)
- gajuru # earth, land, ground (Kh. газар; Bu. газар; WM γajar)
- nulimas # tear (Kh. нулимс/нулмис; Bu. нөлбохон; WM nilbusu)
- süləgə # poem, poetry (Kh. шүлэг; Bu. шүлэт; WM silüg)

However, it does not mean that unstressed non-initial short vowels are always maintained. For example Written Mongolian allomorphs -kü/-qu, which express the verbal noun future/
imperfective, is realized with final vowel as -ka/-kə/-ku/-kü or -xa/-xə/-xo/-xu/-xü similarly to those of Buryat. They are realized also without final vowel as those of Khalkha, thus as -x, -k. For example:

\begin{itemize}
\item \text{ajillaxa} # to work (Kh. ажиллах; Bu. ажаллаха; WM)
\item \text{abxu} # to take (Kh. авах; Bu. абаха; WM abqu)
\item \text{boloxo} # to become (Kh. болов; Bu. болохо; WM)
\item \text{bügüľxə} # to block up (Kh. бөглөх; Bu. бүглэхэ; WM)
\item \text{büğiğləkə} # to dance (Kh. бүжиглэх; Bu. бүжэглэхэ; WM)
\item \text{kocoroko} # to be left behind (Kh. хоцорох; Bu. хосорхо; WM)
\item \text{noyr kürkü} # to feel sleepy (Kh. нойр хүрэх; Bu. нойр хүрэх; WM noyir kürkü)
\item \text{agtuluχ} # to geld, to castrate (Kh. агтлах; Bu. агталха; WM)
\item \text{bəltgəχ} # to prepare (Kh. бэлтгэх; Bu. бэдэхэ; WM)
\item \text{əbderk} # to get broken, to be damaged (Kh. эвдрэх; Bu. эбдэрхэ; WM ebderekü)
\item \text{gomdoχ} # to complain (Kh. гомдох; Bu. гомдохо; WM γomdaqu)
\end{itemize}

3.1.3.9 Written Mongolian \textit{ng} before \textit{n}

Written Mongolian \textit{ng} before \textit{n} is maintained principally as /ŋ/ in Khamnigan. In Khalkha, it appears as /g/. Occasionally it is realized as [g], as in the word for ‘forehead’. Examples are:

\begin{itemize}
\item \text{aŋnaχ} # to hunt (Kh. агнах; Bu. агнаха; WM angnaqu~anglaqu)
\item \text{düŋnəχə} # to conclude (Kh. дүнөх~дүнлөх; Bu. дүнөхэ; WM düngnekü~dünglekü)
\item \text{əŋnəχə} # to be lined up, to be in a row (Kh. энэх; Bu. (Cognate word unavailable); WM engnekü)
\item \text{jīŋnuur} # balance, scale (Kh. жинлүүр~жинлүүр; Bu. шэнгүүр весы; WM jingnegür~jinglegür)
\item \text{magnee} # forehead (Kh. магнай ‘forehead, vanguard, prime; манлай ‘vanguard, prime; Bu. магнай~манлай forehead, vanguard, prime; WM mangnai~manglai ‘forhead, vanguard, prime’)
3.2 Morphological description

3.2.1 Parts of speech

3.2.1.1 General Introduction

The following parts of speech are identified in the data: noun, adjective, numeral, pronoun, verb, adverb, postposition, particle, interjection.

3.2.1.2 Noun

Number, case, reflexive possessiveness, and personal possessiveness are marked in the nouns. There is no number agreement between any noun and its attribute or predicate. Grammatical gender does not exist in this dialect, as is the case in the whole of the Mongolian languages.

3.2.1.2.1 Number

Plurality is marked by suffixing various plural markers to the base noun. The following plural markers are identified in the data. Semantic differences between the plural markers are unidentifiable.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plurality markers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-čuud/-čüüd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(i)d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-nar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-nuud/-nüüd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-uud/-üüd</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A Study of the Mongol Khamnigan Spoken in Northeastern Mongolia

(1) -čuud/-čüüd: Express the collective of people. -čuud for [+back] vowel words, -čüüd for [-back] vowel words.
šiŋkay (Chinese person) ~ šiŋkayčuud (Chinese persons)
əməgtee (woman) ~ əməgteečüüd (women)

(2) -d: When the stem-final is -č, it is -id
suragč (pupil) ~ suragčid (pupils)
mori (horse) ~ morid (horses)

(3) -nar: After some words for person, deity.
bagš (teacher) ~ bagšnar (teachers)

(4) -nuud/-nüüd: -nuud for [+back] vowel words, -nüüd for [-back] vowel words.
šibuu (bird) ~ šibuunuud (birds)
cəcəg (flower) ~ cəcəgnüüd (flowers)

(5) -uud/-üüd: -uud for [+back] vowel words, -üüd for [-back] vowel words.
ors kün (Russian person) ~ oros künüüd (Russian persons)
~ orusuud (Russians)
ükür (cattle) ~ ükürüüd (cattle)

Plurality is also marked by double suffixing of the plural markers.

(6) mori (horse) ~ moriduud (horses: mori-d(PL)-uud(PL))
Plurality is not marked when it is already apparent by other means. For example, we have /xoyor/ ‘two’ and /olon/ ‘many’ as attributes of the nouns in the constructions below.

(7) xoyor mori
two horse
‘two horses’

(8) olon ulad
many country
‘many countries’
A certain plural marker is unbreakable from its base noun.

(9) kün (person) ~ kümüüd (persons)

3.2.1.2.2 Case
The following cases are identified in the data. Case is marked by
suffixing grammatical morphemes to the noun base.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Marker</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative (nom)</td>
<td>-Ø</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive (GEN)</td>
<td>-ee, -n, -iin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative (ACC)</td>
<td>-Ø, -iig, -g, -yee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative-Locative (DL)</td>
<td>-d (-d/-t)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative (ABL)</td>
<td>-(g)aas/-(g)aas/-(g)aas/(g)ees/-(g)ooos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instrumental (INS)</td>
<td>-aar/-(aar/-(aar/oor)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comitative (COM)</td>
<td>-tee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Directional (DIR)</td>
<td>-(u)ruu/-(u)rüü, -luu, -lüü</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3.2.1.2.2.1 Nominative

It is the subject of the sentence. It is marked by zero suffixes. (It is not marked by any suffixes.)

1. mori dabki-xa
   horse run-VNF
   ‘Horse runs.’

2. xoyor kün ir-bə
   two person come-PAS
   ‘Two people came’

### 3.2.1.2.2.2 Genitive

The genitive case is marked by suffixing #-ee# or #-iin# after noun bases ending in a short vowel or consonant, and #-n#[-ŋ] after a long vowel or diphthong. It is uncertain what decides the choice between #-ee# and #-iin#.

1. bagš-ee dəəd surguuli
   teacher-GEN upper school
   ‘teacher’s college’

2. bagš-iin miny gər tosgon-ee tüb-d
   teacher-GEN 1 house village-GEN center-DL
bay-gči
be-VNA
‘My teacher’s house is at the center of the village. (lit. My teacher’s house is one that is in the center of the village.)’

(3) gakay-n  myəka
pig-GEN  meat
‘pork’

3.2.1.2.2.3 Accusative
The accusative case is marked by suffixing /-iig/ after stems which end with either a short vowel or consonant, or /-g/ after stems ending with a long vowel or diphthong. #-g# in /-iig/ is not necessary when a personal possessive or reflexive possessive suffix is added. Rarely, the Buryat type accusative marker /yee/ is found in the data as in example (4). The accusative case marking is not necessary when the object is indefinite. The accusative case marking is not necessary when the reflexive possessiveness is marked to the object.

Sometimes accusativeness is marked by double suffixing of the accusative markers as in example (2).

(1) ali  xəsəg-iig  onilo-bo-či
which  part-ACC  aim at-PAS-2
‘Which part did you aim at?’

(2) kaa-g-ii  ny ügü-gtii
front leg-ACC-ACC  3  give-POL
Give me the front legs (of it), please!

(3) tər xar  üs-tee  mələgə-ɡ  ʊj-ɨɨ
dat  black  fur-having  hat-ACC  see-VOL
‘Let me take a look at that black fur hat!’

(4) mori-yee  uy-ɨ  tabi-čik-əəd  yabagan
horse-ACC  tie-CONI  put-COM-CONP  walking
yaba-suy
go-VOL
‘Let us tie the horses and go by walk!’
3.2.1.2.2.4 Dative-Locative

The dative and locative cases are marked by the suffix /-/d/, and are identical in phonological form. It has an allomorph #-/d# and #-/t#. Although we do not have enough data on the context of each allomorph, it would be comparable with other Mongolian dialects such as Khalkha, Buryat, and Written Mongolian. That is [-t] after /b-/ /g- / -r/ / -s/, [-d] elsewhere. It may be used with the reflexive possessive suffix /-(g)aa/ /-(g)əə, -(g)əə, -(g)əə/.

3.2.1.2.2.5 Ablative

The ablative case is marked by suffixing /-/aas/. It has allomorphs [-/(g)aas], [-/(g)əəs], [-/ees], and -[(g)əəs]. Allomorphs are decided by front-back vowel harmony and labial attraction between stem vowels and suffixes. When a stem ends with a long vowel or diphthong, “latent g” appears. The allomorph [-/ees] comes after the noun base ending in vowel /i/.
A Study of the Mongol Khamnigan Spoken in Northeastern Mongolia

(1) mori-d oy-goos buca-ǰ ir-bə
horse-PL forest-ABL return-CONI come-PAS
‘Horses came back from the forest.’

(2) nuur-aas oy kürtür gurban cag yaba-xa
lake-ABL forest upto three hour go-VNF
‘It takes three hours from the lake to the forest.’

(3) bi ǝkǝnǝr-ǝs-ǝǝ jakia ab-aa-bi
I wife-ABL-REF letter take-PAS-1
‘I received a letter from my wife.’

(4) bi jǝɔli-ees cagaan budaa ab-ba-bi
I market-ABL rice take-PAS-1
‘I bought rice from the market.’

3.2.1.2.2.6 Instrumental
The instrumental case is marked by suffixing /-(g)aar/ ([-(g)aar]/
[-(g)əər]/[-(g)oor]). Allomorphs are decided by front-back vowel
harmony and labial attraction between stem vowels and suffixes.
When stem ends with long vowel or diphthong, “latent g” appears.

(1) aba many mod-oor nom-ee širee kii-bə
father 1PL wood-INS book-GEN table make-PAS
‘Our father made a table with wood’

(2) ta ǝnd yamar ajil-aar ir-əə-t
you here what kind of work-INS come-PAS-2POL
“What for did you come here?”

(3) tǝɾǝnee aba übüčin-ǝər nas bara-bə
his father illness-INS age finish-PAS
‘His father died of an illness.’

(4) bi düü-ǝər-ǝǝ naga takia
I younger brother-INS-REF one chicken
gar-guul-ba-bi
butcher-CM-PAS-1
‘I let my younger brother butcher a chicken’

3.2.1.2.2.7 Comitative
The comitative case is marked by suffixing /-tee/ to the noun base.
Linguistic description of the Mongol Khamnigan spoken in Northeastern Mongolia 41

(1) bi anda-tee-gaa kamt nom uŋši-ba-bi
    I friend-COM-REF together book read-PAS-1
    ‘I read book with a friend of mine.’
(2) bi əkənər-tee-gaa kamt jakia uŋši-aa-bi
    I wife-COM-REF together letter read-PAS-1
    ‘I read a letter together with my wife.’

3.2.1.2.2.8 Directional
The directional case is marked by suffixing /-(u)ruu/ to the noun base. When a stem ends with a consonant, “latent u” appears. Considering the directional allomorph [-luu], [-ürüü] appears after the pronouns. There must be nominal directional case allomorph [-luu], [-lüü], or [-u(r)üü], although they are not found after the noun base in the data.

(1) bidnuus gol-uruu yaba-na karin tanuus
    we river-DIR go-PRE however you(PL)
    uul-uruu yaba-aareegtii
    mountain-DIR go-POL
    ‘We will go to the river. You go to the mountain.’
(2) jagas bari-xaar gol-uruu yaba-xa-mug
    fish catch-AIM river-DIR go-VNF-INT
    dalay-ruu yaba-xa-mug
    sea-DIR go-VNF-INT
    ‘Do you go to the river or to sea to catch fishes?’
(3) maanuus tanar-luu il jakidal yabuul-ka-bid
    we you(PL)-DIR open letter send-VNF-1PL
    ‘We will send you a postcard.’

3.2.1.2.3 Reflexive possessive
Reflexive possessiveness is marked by suffixing /-(g)aa/ after the case marker. Thus it is not marked on nouns in the nominative case. The suffix has allomorphs [-(g)aa:], [-(g)əə], and [-(g)oo].

(1) gar-aa nüür-əə ugaard-yi
    hand-REF face-REF wash-VOL
    ‘Let us wash our faces!’
(2) mori-d-oo xar-aareegtii horse-PL-REF watch-POL
‘Watch the horses!’

(3) bi bagš(i)-d-aa tosgon-ee-goo tuxay I teacher-DL-REF village-GEN-REF about speak-CONI üg-əə-bi
yari-j give-PAS-1
‘I spoke about my village to my teacher.’

3.2.1.2.4 Personal possessive

Personal possessiveness is marked by suffixing the following forms to the noun phrase. Morpheme /many/ is for the first person plural principally, but it denotes the singular person too. The personal possessive marker for the nouns which belongs to the second person singular of the ordinary~close relation is not attested from the data, but it must be /činy/ as that of the pronouns or verbal nouns. The personal possessive marker for the nouns which belong to the second person plural is not attested from the data either. It must be /tany/, however, if it does exist. Morpheme /ny/ is used not only as personal possessive but also as subject indicator.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1st</th>
<th></th>
<th>2nd</th>
<th></th>
<th>3rd</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SG</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>SG</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>SG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-m/many</td>
<td>-m</td>
<td>many</td>
<td>(činy)/tany</td>
<td>(tany)</td>
<td>ny</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1) aba-m nama-d gutal ab-č ügü-bə father-1 I-DL shoes take-CONI give-PAS
‘My father bought me shoes.’

(2) and-iin miny ijii ir-bə friend-GEN 1 mother come-PAS
‘The mother of a friend of mine came.’

(3) aba many mod-oor nom-ee širee kii-bə father 1PL wood-INS book-GEN table make-PAS
‘Our father made a table with wood’
3.2.1.3 Adjective

Adjectives are used as attributes of a noun or a predicate of a sentence. The noun in comparison takes the ablative case marker, but adjectives do not change their form. /ənə/ and /tər/ are used as demonstrative adjectives as we see in examples (3).

(1) tərəné aab nodnoŋ jil šin gər-əə
he(GEN) father last year new house-REF
bari-ba
build-PAS
‘His father built a new house last year.’

(2) maanaree nutag maši sayxan
our native land very beautiful
‘Our native land is very beautiful.’

(3) ənə nuur tər nuur-aas ilüü ürgün
this lake that lake-ABL more wide
‘This lake is wider than that lake.’
3.2.1.4 Numerals

3.2.1.4.1 The numerals in attribute and cardinal forms

Khamnigan numerals have “the latent -n” in their underlying forms, thus it appears on the surface when the numerals are used as an attribute, genitive, dative-locative, and ablative. When numerals are used as cardinal numbers, /-n/ does not appear on the surface.

The morpheme /nəgən/ (one) is not used as a numeral attribute. It is used for the date of the month as in example (1b). It is also used as an indefinite article in English as in example in (1c). The /nəgən/ makes a kind of indefinite pronoun after the interrogative pronoun /kən/ as in example (1d).

(1a) nəɡə
   ‘one’
(1b) šin-ee nəɡən
   new-GEN one
   first day of a month
(1c) bagš namad nəɡə nom ügü-əə
   teacher I(DL) one book give-PAS
   ‘Teacher gave me a book.’
(1d) təygəl kən nəɡən kūn ir-əə gü
   then who one person come-PAS INT
   ‘Is there anyone who came then?’

The morphemes /koyor/ ‘two’ and /xoyor/ ‘two’ appear almost evenly. The morpheme /xoyoron/ is not used as an attribute but as the date of the month. The /koyor/xoyor/ are used as a coordinative word as in (2d).

(2a) koyor/xoyor
   ‘two’
(2b) koyor/xoyor mori
   two horse
   ‘two horses’
(2c) šin-ee xoyron
    new-GEN two
    'second day of the month'
(2d) iji abo xoyor yari-la jii-na
    mother father two talk-REC-PRO-PRE
    'Mother and father are talking to each other.'

Thus, numerals in the data may be presented as below.¹⁰

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Meaning(s) and Form(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 # təg (&lt; Ti. thig[le] 'zero')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 # nəgə, nəgən</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 # koyor/xoyor, xoyoron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 # gurba, gurban</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 # dürbü, dürbün (as in dürbünii nəgə 'one fourth')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 # tabu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 # jirgaa/jurgaa, jurgaan (as in jurgaaneek koyor)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 # doloo, dolaan (as in dolaan burkan 'Ursa major')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 # nayma, nayman (as in nayman nasutee)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 # yüsü</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 # araba, arba, araban (as in araban jil 'ten years')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 # arban nəgə</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 # arban koyor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 # arban gurba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 # arban dürb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 # arban tabu, arban taban (as in šinee arban taban '15th day of a month')</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 # arban jurgaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 # arban doloo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 # arban naym</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19 # arban yüsü</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 # kori</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 # korin nəgə</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹⁰ Numerals təg (zero), buma (hundred thousand), sayi (million), dünčüür (hundred million), and tərbüm (billion) are of Tibetan origin.
30 # guči, gučin (as in gučin minuut ‘30 minutes’)
40 # düči, düčin (as in düčin minuut ‘40 minutes’)
50 # tabi
60 # jira
70 # dal
80 # naya
90 # yərə
100 # juu, juun (as in juun nasutee)
200 # koyor juu/xoyor juu
300 # gurban juu
1,000 # myaŋga, myəŋga, myəŋu
1,942 # myaŋga yüşin juun düčin koyor (as in myaŋga yüşin juun düčin koyor ond ‘in the year of 1942’)
2,000 # koyor myəŋga
3,000 # gurban myəŋga
6,000 # jurgaan myaŋgan (as in jurgaan myaŋgan colkoob ‘6,000 tugrug’)
10,000 # arban məngu/arban myəŋga/tümə
30,000 # gučin myaŋgan (as in gučin myaŋgan colkoob ‘30,000 tugrugs’)
36,000 # gučin jurgaan mjəŋgan (as in gučin jurgaan mjəŋgan colkoob ‘36,000 tugrugs’)
45,000 # düčin taban myəŋgan (as in düčin taban myəŋgan tugrug ‘45,000 tugrugs’)
83,000 # nayan myaŋga gurban juu (as in nayan myaŋga gurban juu kabtgay dürbüljin kəlimiitər ‘83,000 square kilometers’)
100,000 # juun myəŋga/arban tümə/buma (< Ti. ‘bum ‘one hundred thousand’)
1,000,000 # sayi (< Ti. sa-yə ‘one milion’) 
10,000,000 # araban sayi
100,000,000 # juun sayi/dünčüür (< Ti. dung-’pyar ‘one hundred million’)
1,000,000,000 # tərbüm (< Ti. ter-’bum ‘billion’)
10,000,000,000 # juun düncüür/ik tərbüm
3.2.1.4.2 Ordinal numerals

“Ordinality” is marked by suffixing /-dugaar/ to the cardinal forms. This suffix has an allomorph [-dūgəər] which comes after [-back] vowel words. It also has the free variant [-dūgəər]. The following ordinal numerals were identified in the data:

- first # nəɡədūɡəər
- second # koyordugaar
- third # gurbaadugaar
- fourth # dürbūdūɡəər
- tenth # arabadugaar
- fifth # tabadugaar
- tenth # arbadugaar
- eleventh # arban nəɡədūɡəər
- twentieth # koridugaar/xoridugaar
- thirtieth # gučidugaar
- fortieth # düčidūɡəər

Months are expressed by the ordinal numbers. The allmorph for the “ordinality” marking is [-sūɡəər] in January and November. For the seventh month, that is July, Khamnigan has two forms as in (2a) and (2b).

(1a) nəɡə-sūɡəər sar
    one-ORD month
    January (lit. ‘the first month’)

(1b) arban nəɡə-sūɡəər sar
    ten one-ORD month
    November (lit. ‘the eleventh month’)

(2a) dol-dugaar sar
    seven-ORD month
    July (lit. ‘the seventh month’)

(2b) doloo-dugaar sar
    seven-ORD month
    July (lit. ‘the seventh month’)

The year and the day of a month are expressed by cardinal
numbers, and the days of the week are Tibetan borrowings.

(3) myaŋa yüsün juun düčin koyor on-d
thousand nine hundred forty two year-DL
bay-guula-gda-san
be-CM-PM-VNP
'(It was) established in 1942.'

(4) šin-ee arban taban
new-GEN ten five
'the 15th day of the first month of the lunar year'

(5) dabaa garigi
monday day of the week
'Monday'

3.2.1.4.3 Collective numerals
Collectivity is marked by suffixing /-uul/ to the numeral base, and the /-(V)r/ is dropped in the surface form. Thus, the underlying form in the collective is #koyoruul# and #xoyoruul#, and the surface representation is /koyuul/ and /xoyuul/. Although it is not exactly a numeral but rather an interrogative word, kədüül ‘how many together’ seems to be derived from the combination of stem of /kəd(ən)/ and the collective marker /-uul/ which is realized as [-üül] by the [± back] vowel harmony.

(1) koy-uul-aa kamt yaba-yəgtii
two-COL-REF together go-POL
'Let two of us go together.'

(2) tanayx am bül kəd-üül-əə-t
yours family how many-COL-REF-2POL
'How many people are there all together in your family?'

3.2.1.4.4 Distributive numerals
Only the following examples of the distributive numerals are identified in the data. Distributive numerals are marked by the repetition of the same numeral base (cardinal form) and the suffixing of the instrumental case marker /-aar/ to the second numeral base (cardinal form).
Approximate numerals

Approximativeness is marked by suffixing the marker /-aad/ to the numeral as in example (1), (2), (3), or putting a word with an approximate meaning after the numeral as in example (4) and (5). The base of the numeral tends to be in the cardinal form.

(1) kori-ood
twenty-app
‘over twenty’

(2) guči-aad
thirty-app
‘over thirty’

(3) düči-əəd
forty-app
‘over forty’

(4) tər činy kədün ürk ayl-tee gajar be
that 2 how many household-having place INT
koyor juu garee ürk ayl-tee
two hundred over household-having
‘How many households are there in that place? There are over two hundred households.’

(5) odoo kəntee aymag-t kamnigaŋ kün
now xentii aimag-DL Khamnigan people
kər olon bay-na myaŋa orčim kün bii
how many be-PRE thousand near people be(PRE)
‘How many Khamnigan people are there in Kentii aimag,'
now? There are around one thousand people.’

3.2.1.4.6 Fraction

Fractions are expressed by the construction “the denominator in genitive form + the numerator in the cardinal form”, as is the case in other Mongolian languages.

(1) gurban-ee nəɣə
tree-GEN one
‘one third’
(2) dürbün-ee nəɣə
four-GEN one
‘one fourth’
(3) jurgaan-ee koyor
six-GEN two
‘two sixths’

3.2.1.4.7 Multiple numerals

Multiplicity is marked by suffixing the marker /-taa/ to the numeral as in example (1), or putting such words as /udaa/ ‘time, occasion’, dakin ‘~time, ~fold, again’ which can induce the meaning of multiplicity, after the numeral as in example (2) and (3). We do not have examples of the usage of /dakin/ ‘~time, ~fold, double, again’ in the data. The numeral functions as an attribute of the words with a meaning of multiplicity.

(1) koyor-taa
two-MUL
‘two times, twice’
(2) nəɣə udaa
one occasion
‘one time, once’
(3) gurban udaa oči-son-bi
three occasion go-VNF-1
‘I have been there three times.’
3.2.1.4.8 Pseudo-numeral words
There are words which are not exactly numerals but share certain functions of the numeral words, including /xugas/ ‘half’, /dakin/ ‘double’, /koso/ ‘pair’, /bügüd-bügs/ ‘all’, /niitə/ ‘all, total’, /olon/ ‘many, a lot’, /ücəə/ ‘few, little’.

3.2.1.4.9 Numerals and interrogative pronouns

(1) odoo kəntee aymag-t kamniąŋ kün kər olon now xentii aimag-DL Khamnigan people how many bay-na myaŋga orčim kün bii be-PRE thousand near people be(PRE) ‘How many Khamnigan people are there in Kentii aimag, now? There are around one thousand people.’

(2) tom ny kədən nasu-tee nayman nasu-tee big 3 how many age-having eight age-having ‘How old is your big child? He/She is eight years old.’

(3) ünü ny kədii-xədii düčin taban myaŋga colkoob price 3 how much forty five thousand tugrug ‘How much is the price of it? It is forty five thousand tugrugs.’

3.2.1.4.10 More than and less than
We may speculate that the expression ‘more than’ and ‘less than’ are constructed by “numeral-ablative + dəəš ‘above’” and “numeral-ablative + dooš ‘below’” through the following information in the data.

(1) arba-aas dəəš ten-ABL above ‘more than ten’

(2) arba-aas dooš ten-ABL below ‘less than ten’
3.2.1.5 Pronouns

3.2.1.5.1 Personal pronouns

3.2.1.5.1.1 First Person

3.2.1.5.1.1.1 Singular

The nominative /bi/ and the genitive /minyee/ of the first person singular of the Mongol Khamnigan are the same as those forms of other major Mongolian dialects. The common underlying of these two cases may be proposed as #bi(n)#. The nominative /bi/ may possibly be explained as the final drop of the unstable /-n/ on the surface level. The initial /m-/ in the genitive /minyee/ then may then be explained as the “nasalization of the initial /b-/” by the assimilation to the /-n/ which is retrieved in the genitive case as /-nyee/, on the surface level.

For the dative-locative case, Khamnigan has both /nada-/ and /nama-/ stems, while Standard Khalkha has the /nada-/ stem, and Standard Buryat has the /nama-/ stem. It is not surprising however, because Khamnigan is not the only dialect that has both /nada-/ and /nama-/ stems in oblique cases. For example, the oblique cases of the first person singular of Ordos dialect in Mostaert (1968: 482) has both stems including the dative-locative. Although the major form of the dative-locative of the first person singular is /nadur/ (to me) in Written Mongolian, the /nama-/ stem form is also registered in Lessing (1982: 562) and Kowalewskii (1846: 615). The Secret History of the Mongols has no example of the dative-locative form with the /nama-/ stem, though.

In accusative form, it has only the /nama-/ stem as other Mongolian dialects.

For the instrumental case, Khamnigan has both the /nada-/
Linguistic description of the Mongol Khamnigan spoken in Northeastern Mongolia 53

Nama moi (acc.) [mo. namayi]
Nama'yu = nava.
Namaq = nama.
Nama'gi = nama.
Nama'gar = nabar.
Nama'la = nala.
Nama'ly = namdry.
Nama'q vers moi, dans ma direction.
Nama't'aa = nata'a.

Oblique cases of the first person singular, Ordos dialect, Mostaert (1968: 482).

Khalkha has only the /nada-/ while Written Mongolian has both the /nada-/ and the /nama-/ stems.

For the ablative case, the Binder sum consultant has only the /nama-/ stem as in Buryat while the Dadal sum consultant has both the /nada-/ and the /nama-/ stems as in Written Mongolian. Khalkha and Middle Mongolian have the /nada-/ stem.

Our Dadal sum consultant chose the dative-locative form in the first person singular for the expression of the directional meaning, while the Binder sum consultant used the grammatical morpheme /-ruu/ as did the Khalkha speakers, however the stem was /nama-/ as the Ordos form presented above.

(1a) Binder: nama-d il jakidal yabuul-aaree
I-DL open letter send-PRE
'Send a postcard to me please!'

(1b) Dadal: nama-ruu il jaxidal yabuul-aaree
I-DIR open letter send-PRE
'Send a postcard toward me please'

Many a Mongolist including Yu (2004) have often regarded the Middle Mongolian dative-locatives /nada/ (to me) and /nadur/ (to me), and the ablative /nadača/ (from me) of the first person and the /nama-/ stems, while Khalkha has the /nada-/ and Buryat has the /nama-/ stem, respectively. Middle Mongolian has the /nama-/ and Written Mongolian has both the /nada-/ and the /nama-/ stems.

For the comitative case, it has only the /nama-/ stem as Buryat and Middle Mongolian do.
singular, as the combination of the stem na- and the grammatical morphemes -da, -dur, -dača respectively. Another possibility might be an underlying stem *nada-, thus: *nada-da > nada (to me), *nada-dur > nadur (to me), and *nada-ača > nadača (from me).

Poppe (1960) and other Buryat grammars do not mention the directional case of the noun and the pronoun. Our ASK REAL questionnaire has not enough questions to draw the examples of the usage of the directional case, especially for that of the personal pronouns. We have some examples of the directional case in the noun, which suggests that the directional case of the pronoun also exists in Buryat dialects. The following examples were collected during the 2004 fieldwork study of the (Aga) Khori Buryat of the ASK REAL team from Mrs. Bal'jinimaeva Tsypelma Tsyrenovna (A Mongolist, born in 1950):

(2a) mori-d tala-ruu xarayld-na
    Horse-PL steppe-DIR run-PRE
    ‘Horses run toward the steppe.’

(2b) tərə mori-in šinj̑-eer saha-ruu or-oo
    he horse-GEN feature-INS snow-DIR enter-PAS
    ‘He dashed into the snow like a horse.’

(2c) bida xada-ruu gara-xa-da agna-xa-bdi
    we mountain-DIR go out-VNF-DL hunt-VNF-2PL
    ‘We will do hunting when we go to the mountain.’
Declension of the First Person Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dialects, Cases, Underlying Stems</th>
<th>Mongol Khamnigan</th>
<th>Khalkha</th>
<th>Buryat</th>
<th>Middle Mongolian (Secret History, 1240)</th>
<th>Written Mongolian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Binder</td>
<td>Dadal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom</td>
<td>*bin-</td>
<td>bi</td>
<td>bi</td>
<td>bi</td>
<td>bi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen</td>
<td>*bin-</td>
<td>minyee</td>
<td>minyee</td>
<td>minii</td>
<td>minu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nada-</td>
<td>nadad</td>
<td>nadad</td>
<td>nada, nadad</td>
<td>nada, nadur, nada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nama-</td>
<td>namad</td>
<td>namada</td>
<td>namda</td>
<td>namdur, namadu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc</td>
<td>nada-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nama-</td>
<td>namayg</td>
<td>namayg</td>
<td>namayg, namayye</td>
<td>namayi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl</td>
<td>nada-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>nadaas</td>
<td>nadaas</td>
<td>nadača</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nama-</td>
<td>namaas</td>
<td>namaas</td>
<td>namhaa</td>
<td>nama-ača</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ins</td>
<td>nada-</td>
<td>nadaar</td>
<td>nadaar</td>
<td>nadaar</td>
<td>nada-bar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nama-</td>
<td>namaar</td>
<td>namaar</td>
<td>namaar</td>
<td>namaar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Com</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>nadtei</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>nada-luuγa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nama-</td>
<td>namatee</td>
<td>namatee</td>
<td>namtay</td>
<td>namalu’a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dir</td>
<td>nada-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>nadruu</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nama-</td>
<td>(namad)</td>
<td>namaruu</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.2.1.5.1.1.2 Plural

It has /bidan-/ and /man-/ type stems, hearer inclusive and hearer exclusive respectively as the consultants felt. However, the borderline is not always clear, especially when /bidan-/ is concerned.

(3a) Both consultants:

| bidan-iig | bitgii | jod-ooree |
| we(INC)-ACC | NEG | beat-PRE |
‘Do not beat us.’

(3b) Binder consultant:

bidən-ürüü il jakidal yabuul-aaryǝqtii
we(INC)-DIR open letter send-POL
‘Send us a postcard, please.’

(3c) Binder consultant:

manar-t jaxia bič-eeryǝqtii
we(EXC)-DL letter write-POL
‘Write a letter to us, please.’

(3c’)Dadal consultant:

biden-d jaxia bič-ǝree
we(INC)-DL letter write-PRE
‘Write a letter to us.’

(3d) Binder consultant:

manuus tanar-luu il jakidal yabuul-ka-bid
we(EXC) you(PL)-DIR open letter send-VNF-1PL
‘We will send you(plural) a postcard.’

(3d’) Dadal consultant:

bid tanar-luu-gaa il jaxidal
we(INC) you(PL)-DIR-REF open letter
yabuul-xa-bid
send-VNF-1PL
‘We will send you(plural) a postcard.’

The Binder *sum* consultant used /bidan-/ and /bidanuus-/ stems and the Dadal consultant used /bidan-/ and /bidannar-/ stems for the inclusive expressions, which are all found in many Mongolian dialects, including the Ordos dialect. The /bidnuud-/ variety in Buryat or Ordos did not appear in the speeches of our consultants. The stems /bidanuus-/ and /bidannar-/ must be the combinations of /bidan-/ (we) and the plural markers /-uus/ or /-nar/. The /bidanuus-/ and /bidannar-/ stems, that is /bidnuus/ and /bidnar/ in Binder realization, were found only in the nominative expressions.

The /man-/ type stem has three varieties: /man-/, /*mannar-/, and /manuus-. The stems /*mannar-/ and /manuus-/ must be
the combinations of /man-/ and the plural markers /-uus/ or /-nar/. The Binder sum consultant used the /man-/ type stem in the genitive, the dative-locative, the accusative, the instrumental, and the comitative forms, which means it is not used in nominative and directional expressions. The stem /*mannar-*/ of the /man-/ type stem is found only in the genitive expression, and the stem /manuus-/> is used in the genitive and the instrumental expressions of the Binder sum consultant. The Dadal sum consultant had only the /man-/ stem among three varieties of the /man-/ type stem, and used it for genitive and instrumental expressions.

### Declension of the First Person Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dialects, Cases, Underlying stems</th>
<th>Mongol Khamnigan</th>
<th>Khalkha</th>
<th>Buryat</th>
<th>Middle Mongolian (Secret History, 1240)</th>
<th>Written Mongolian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom</td>
<td><strong>BINDER</strong></td>
<td><strong>DADAL</strong></td>
<td><strong>KHALKHA</strong></td>
<td><strong>buryat</strong></td>
<td><strong>middle mongolian</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bidan-</td>
<td>bid</td>
<td>bid</td>
<td>bid</td>
<td>bide</td>
<td>bida(n)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*bidannar-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>bidnar</td>
<td>bidnar</td>
<td>bidener</td>
<td>ba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bidanuus-</td>
<td>bidnuus</td>
<td>bidnuus</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*mannar-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manuus-</td>
<td>manuus</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>bidan-</td>
<td>bidnee</td>
<td>bidnee</td>
<td>bidnii</td>
<td>bideneey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bidan-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*manner</td>
<td>manaree</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>maanaray</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manuus</td>
<td>manuusee</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bidan-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*bidannar-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>bidenerte</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bidanuus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man-</td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>manda</td>
<td>mana,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>mandur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*manner</td>
<td>manart</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>maanarta</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manuus</td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bidan-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*bidannar-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>bideniye</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bidanuus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man-</td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>maniye</td>
<td>mani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*manner</td>
<td>manarlii</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
<td>maanariye</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manuus</td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bidan-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*bidannar-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>bidenerhee</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bidanuus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man-</td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>manhaa</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*manner</td>
<td>manar</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
<td>man</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manuus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ins</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bidan-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*bidannar-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>bideneer</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bidanuus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man-</td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>manaar</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*manner</td>
<td>manaraar</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
<td>maanaraar</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manuus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Linguistic description of the Mongol Khamnigan spoken in Northeastern Mongolia

3.2.1.5.1.2 Second Person

3.2.1.5.1.2.1 Ordinary ~ Close Singular

It is basically the same with the Khalkha system in all the case expressions. The Binder and the Dadal sum systems are exactly the same even in phonological levels. The consultants used the /či(n)-/ stem in nominative and genitive expressions, and the /čama-/ stem for remaining oblique cases. The nominative /či/ may be explained as the "-n drop" as that of the /bi(n)-/.

12) Our ASK REAL questionnaire did not cover the second person [+neutral] pronouns. If we checked the third person [+neutral] pronoun, there would be some varieties of the /öör-/ (self, usually addressed to the unfamiliar person of the similar age) and the /öörs-/ (selves, usually addressed to the unfamiliar people of the similar age) stems as in the Khalkha and some other Mongolian dialects.
Declension of the Second Person Singular: Ordinary ~ Close

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dialects, Cases, Underlying stems</th>
<th>Mongol Khamnigan</th>
<th>Khalkha</th>
<th>Buryat</th>
<th>Middle Mongolian (Secret History, 1240)</th>
<th>Written Mongolian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Binder</td>
<td>Dadal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom</td>
<td>či(n)</td>
<td>čid</td>
<td>či</td>
<td>ši</td>
<td>či</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen</td>
<td>či(n)-</td>
<td>činyee</td>
<td>činyee</td>
<td>čini</td>
<td>šini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DL</td>
<td>čama-</td>
<td>čamad</td>
<td>čamad</td>
<td>čamd</td>
<td>šamda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc</td>
<td>čama-</td>
<td>čamayg</td>
<td>čamayg</td>
<td>čamayg</td>
<td>šamay, šama yye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl</td>
<td>čama-</td>
<td>čamaas</td>
<td>čamaas</td>
<td>čamaas</td>
<td>šamhaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ins</td>
<td>čama-</td>
<td>čamaar</td>
<td>čamaar[ľimar]</td>
<td>čamaar</td>
<td>šamaar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Com</td>
<td>čama-</td>
<td>čamatee</td>
<td>čamatee</td>
<td>čamatee</td>
<td>šamay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dir</td>
<td>čama-</td>
<td>čamaruu</td>
<td>čamaruu</td>
<td>čamaruu</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.2.1.5.1.2.2 Polite ~ Distant Singular

Our questionnaire actually had no questions which may have induced statements that include the ablative, the instrumental, the comitative, and the directional cases of the polite ~ distant second person singular forms. However, it is likely that both consultants have the /tan-/ stem pronoun for the polite ~ distant singular in all the cases, as do the Khalkha speakers.

I was not able to collect the Buryat examples of the ablative, instrumental, and the directional usage of the second person singular for the polite ~ distant expressions in my data from the fieldwork studies of the Aga, the Alar, the Tsongool, the Sartuul, the Barguzin, the Tunka, and the Oka dialects in Buryatia and Irkutsk oblast, and in an interview with a Khori speaker in Seoul from 2004 to 2007. However, it is almost apparent that the Buryat also began to use the /tan-/ stem for the polite ~ distant expressions of the second person singular and /tannar-/ for the plurality of all the case declensions. The following examples were
collected during the 2004 fieldwork study on the (Aga) Khori Buryat of the ASK REAL from Mrs. Bal'jinimaeva Tsypelmaa Tsyrenovna (a Mongolist, born in 1950):

(4a) ta xana-haa ir-bə-ta?
you(POL) where-ABL come-PAS-2POL
bi babuškin-aar irkuuck-hee yaba-na-b
I Babushkin-INS Irkuutsk-Abl go-PRE-1
‘Where are you coming from? I am travelling from Irkutsk through Babushkin.’

(4b) bidə gol ošo-ya tanar xada-aar
we river go-VOL you(PL) mountain-INS
gara-gtii
go out-POL
‘Let us go to the river, and you go to the mountain please!’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dialects, Cases, Underlying stem(s)</th>
<th>Mongol Khamnigan</th>
<th>Khalkha</th>
<th>Buryat</th>
<th>Middle Mongolian (Secret History, 1240)</th>
<th>Written Mongolian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Binder</td>
<td>Dadal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom</td>
<td>ta(n)-</td>
<td>ta</td>
<td>ta</td>
<td>ta</td>
<td>ta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen</td>
<td>ta(n)-</td>
<td>tanyee</td>
<td>tanyee</td>
<td>tanii</td>
<td>tan, tane, tanay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DL</td>
<td>ta(n)-</td>
<td>tand</td>
<td>tand</td>
<td>tand</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc</td>
<td>ta(n)-</td>
<td>taniig</td>
<td>taniig</td>
<td>taniig</td>
<td>taniye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl</td>
<td>ta(n)-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>tanaas</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ins</td>
<td>ta(n)-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>tanaar</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Com</td>
<td>ta(n)-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>tantay</td>
<td>tantay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dir</td>
<td>ta(n)-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>tanruu</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The stem /ta(n)-/ and its declension forms were used only for the second person plural in *The Secret History of the Mongols*. Lessing (1982: 760) states that /ta/ in Written Mongolian is used for the polite address but examples are unavailable especially
for the oblique cases. Kowalewski (1849: 1547, 1559-1560) has certain declension forms for /ta(n)-/ but it is uncertain whether it was for plural or polite ~ distant expression due to the ambiguity of the Russian "bac" and French "vous", which may be interpreted both ways.

3.2.1.5.1.2.3 Plural
The Binder sum consultant used the /tanar-/, the /tanuus-/, and the /tanuud-/ stems, which are apparently the combinations of stem /ta(n)-/, which itself was already second person plural, and the plural markers /-nar/ or /-uus/. Both stems are found in Khalkha and in Buryat.

The Buryat /tanaad/ was not used by our consultants. However, the possibility that our questionnaire was limited, and thus our data too, must also be considered.

In Khalkha, /tanar-/ is regarded as the standard form for the second person plural, while the stem /ta(n)-/ is regarded so in Standard Buryat, which is based on the Khori dialect.

The stem /tanuus-/ appeared only in the nominative and the genitive forms of our Binder sum consultant. She used the /tanuud-/ stem only once, and it was in nominative case.

The Dadal sum consultant used only the /tanar-/ stem which is the Standard Khalka form for the second person plural.

Declension of the Second Person Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dialects, Cases, Underlying stems</th>
<th>Mongol Khamnigan</th>
<th>Khalkha</th>
<th>Buryat</th>
<th>Middle Mongolian (Secret History, 1240)</th>
<th>Written Mongolian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom ta(n)-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>ta</td>
<td>ta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*tannar-</td>
<td>tanar</td>
<td>tanar</td>
<td>tanar</td>
<td>tanar</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tanuus-</td>
<td>tanuus</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>tanuus</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tanuud-</td>
<td>tanuud</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gen</td>
<td>Gen</td>
<td>Gen</td>
<td>Gen</td>
<td>Gen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tan-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>tanay(?)</td>
<td>tanay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen</td>
<td>*tannar-</td>
<td>tanaree</td>
<td>tanaree</td>
<td>tanariin</td>
<td>tanaray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tanuus-</td>
<td>tanuusee</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tanuud-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tanuud-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DL</td>
<td>tan-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>tanda</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*tannar-</td>
<td>tanart</td>
<td>tanart</td>
<td>tanart</td>
<td>tanarta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tanuus-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>tanuusta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tanuud-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc</td>
<td>tan-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>taniye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*tannar-</td>
<td>tanariig</td>
<td>tanariig</td>
<td>tanariig</td>
<td>tanariye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tanuus-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>tanu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tanuud-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl</td>
<td>tan-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>tanhaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*tannar-</td>
<td>tanaraas</td>
<td>tanaraas</td>
<td>tanaraas</td>
<td>tanarhaa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tanuus-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tanuud-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ins</td>
<td>tan-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>tanaar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*tannar-</td>
<td>tanaraar</td>
<td>tanaraar</td>
<td>tanaraar</td>
<td>tanaraar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tanuus-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tanuud-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Com</td>
<td>tan-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>tantay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*tannar-</td>
<td>tanartee</td>
<td>tanartee</td>
<td>tanartee</td>
<td>tanartay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tanuus-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tanuud-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dir</td>
<td>tan-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*tannar-</td>
<td>tanarluu</td>
<td>tanarluu</td>
<td>tanarluu</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tanuus-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tanuud-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.2.1.5.1.3 Third person\textsuperscript{13)}

3.2.1.5.1.3.1 Third person singular
We noticed the /tərən-/ and /tüün-/ stems of the third person singular pronoun, which are used usually for the persons not in the scene of the speech, and which may be described with the symbol [-near]. The Binder sum consultant used the /tərən-/ stem, which behaves as an ordinary noun, for all the declensions except the directional case. She used the /tüün-/ stem, the same one as the Standard Khalkha stem /tüün-/ for the oblique cases in the third person singular, but for the genitive and the dative-locative cases only. The Dadal sum consultant used the /tərən-/ stem for all the case expressions except the accusative case. She used the /tüün-/ stem for the genitive, the dative-locative, and the instrumental cases.

Although Standard Khalkha has the /tüün-/ stem for the oblique cases, one may hear or see the /teren-/ stem declensions in the speech or writing of Khalkha speakers quite often.

Declension forms of the third person singular pronoun in The Secret History of the Mongols, a representative Middle Mongolian text, were imaari (instrumental-accusative > instrumental), imada (dative-locative), imayi (accusative), and inu (genitive). The stems /tere/ for the nominative and /te‘ün-/ for the oblique cases were used as the demonstrative pronoun. However, they were used as the personal pronoun, too. For example:

(5a) Volume 1, page 23, lines 7–8 for nominative:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Jadaran(u) } & \text{ ebüge } \text{ tere } \text{ bol-ba} \\
\text{Jadaran(tribe)-GEN } & \text{ grandfather } \text{ he } \text{ become-PAS}
\end{align*}
\]

'(lit. As for the grandfather of the Jadaran, he became.) He

\textsuperscript{13)} Our ASK REAL questionnaire did not cover the third person [+ near] pronouns, which would denote the person(s) at the scene of the speech. If we checked the third person [+ near] pronoun, there would be some varieties of the /ene-/ (this person, singular) and the /ede(n)-/, / ednar-/ (these people, plural) stems as in the Khalkha, the Buryat, and some other Mongolian dialects.
became the ancestor of the Jadaran tribe.’

(5b) Vol 11, page 37, lines 6~9, nominative and genitive:

jebe tere od-ču qan melig-ün balayad
Jebe he go-CONI Qan Melig(name)-GEN cities
da’ari-ju ülü könde-n γada’un nögči-jü’ü.
attack-CONI NEG touch-CONM outside pass-PAS
Te’ünü qoyina-ča sübe’etei mün yosu’ar
he-GEN behind-ABL Sübeetei same manner-INS
üli könden nögči-jü’ü
NEG touch-CONM pass-PAS
‘(lit. Jebe, he went passing the cities of the Qan Melig,
passed without touching (them). Behind him, Sübe’etei in
the same manner passed without touching (them)). Jebe,
without touching, detoured the cities of the Qan Melig.
Behind from him, Sübe’etei, in the same manner, passed
without touching (the cities of the Qan Melig).’

Declension of the Third Person Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dialects, Cases, Underlying Stems</th>
<th>Mongol Khamnigan</th>
<th>Khalkha</th>
<th>Buryat</th>
<th>Middle Mongolian (Secret History, 1240)</th>
<th>Written Mongolian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Binder</td>
<td>Dadal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nom</td>
<td>tərən-</td>
<td>tər</td>
<td>tər</td>
<td>tere</td>
<td>tere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen</td>
<td>tərən-</td>
<td>tərən-</td>
<td>tərən</td>
<td>tərən(e)ney</td>
<td>te’ünü</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tərəni</td>
<td>tərəni</td>
<td>tərəni</td>
<td>tərəni</td>
<td>tərəni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DL</td>
<td>tərən-</td>
<td>tərən-</td>
<td>tərən</td>
<td>tere(e)nde</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tərən-</td>
<td>tərən-</td>
<td>tərən</td>
<td>tere(e)ndee</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tərən-</td>
<td>tərən-</td>
<td>tərən</td>
<td>tere(e)ndee</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc</td>
<td>tərən-</td>
<td>tərən-</td>
<td>tərən</td>
<td>tere(e)niye</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tərən-</td>
<td>tərən-</td>
<td>tərən</td>
<td>tere(e)niye</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl</td>
<td>tərən-</td>
<td>tərən-</td>
<td>tərən</td>
<td>tere(e)nee</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tərən-</td>
<td>tərən-</td>
<td>tərən</td>
<td>tere(e)nee</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 3.2.1.5.1.3.2 Third person plural

The Binder *sum* consultant has the /tədən-/ /təd-/ and /tədəd-/ stems while the Dadal *sum* consultant has the /tədən-/ and /tədnar-/ stems.

The /təd-/ stem of the Binder dialect must have been derived through analogy from the stem /tədən-/ which is the common stem in modern Mongolian dialects for the third person plural. Then, the stem /tədəd-/ must have been derived from the stem /təd-/ by adding the plural marker /-d/. Otherwise, we would have to attribute the dative-locative /tədəd/ of the Binder dialect as the repeated articulatory errors of the consultant.

(6a) təd-əd jəki jakia yabuul-aaregti
    they-DL letter send-POL
    ‘Send them a letter, please.’

(6a’)təd-əd ɨ́l jakidal yabuul-aaregti
    they-DL open letter send-POL
    ‘Send them a postcard, please.’

(6b) tədəd üčügüdür surguuli-d-aa yaba-san
    they yesterday school-DL-REF go-VNP
    ‘They went to school yesterday.’

(6b’)tədəd margaaši surguuli-d-aa yaba-ka
    they tomorrow school-DL-REF go-VNF
    ‘They will go to school tomorrow.’

The stem #*tədənnar-# > /tədnar-/ of the Dadal dialect must have been derived from the stem /tədən-/ by suffixing the plural
marker /-nar/. Its equivalent is found in the Buryat dialect as /tedener-/ according to Poppe (1960: 55), although the Standard Buryat stem seems to be /teden-. Khalkha also has /tednar-. Although the Standard Khalkha form is /teden-, one may easily collect the /tednar- in the speeches of the Khalkha speakers.

The third person plural in The Secret History of the Mongols has two systems, they are /an-/ and /teden-/: The /an-/ stem has such declension forms as /andur/ (dative-locative), /ani/ (accusative), and /anu/ (genitive) while the /teden-/ stem has /tede/ (nominative), tede’eri (instrumental-accusative > accusative), /tede/ (dative-locative), /tedeni/ (accusative), and /tedendiir/ (dative-locative). The stem /teden-/ was also the demonstrative pronoun in The Secret History of the Mongols.

**Declension of the Third Person Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dialects, Cases, Underlying Stems</th>
<th>Mongol Khamnigan</th>
<th>Khal-kha</th>
<th>Buryat</th>
<th>Middle Mongolian (Secret History, 1240)</th>
<th>Written Mongolian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Binder</td>
<td>Dadal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nom</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tadən-/</td>
<td>təd</td>
<td>təd</td>
<td>ted</td>
<td>tede</td>
<td>tede</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/təd-/</td>
<td>təd</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tədəd-/</td>
<td>tədəd</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*/tədənnar-/</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>tədnar</td>
<td>tednər</td>
<td>tede'reri</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gen</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tadən-/</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>tədənər</td>
<td>tədənii</td>
<td>tede(n)e'r</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/təd-/</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tədəd-/</td>
<td>tədəd</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*/tədənnar-/</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>tede'ere'y</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DL</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tadən-/</td>
<td>tədənd</td>
<td>tədənd</td>
<td>tədend</td>
<td>tede(n)e'r</td>
<td>tede, tede'nür</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/təd-/</td>
<td>təd</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tədəd-/</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*/tədənnar-/</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>tede'erte</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Linguistic description of the Mongol Khamnigan spoken in Northeastern Mongolia
### 3.2.1.5.2 Possessive pronouns

It seems that we failed to make the difference, between the genitive form of a personal pronoun and the possessive pronoun, clear to the consultant, or more precisely speaking, make clear what we were expecting from her. Since she gave us /tanayx/ ‘your family members’, possessive pronouns of this linguistic unit must be the combination of the “genitive form of the personal pronouns + morpheme -x”, as in Khalkha.
Possessive pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>SG</th>
<th>PL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>minyeex</td>
<td>bidneex, manayx</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>činyeex, taniix</td>
<td>tanayx, tanareex</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>təroneex/tüüneex</td>
<td>tədədeex</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.2.1.5.3 Reflexive pronouns

The words /əər/ ‘self’ plays the role of reflexive pronoun. Cases, reflexive possessiveness, and number are marked on this word.

1) bi əər-eeŋ-gəə tüləə tišee oči-son-bi
   I self-GEN-REF for thither go-VNP-1
   ‘I went there for myself.’

2) manuuς əər-sd-eeŋ-gəə tüləə tišee
   we(EXC) self-PL-GEN-REF for thither
   oči-son-bid
   go-VNP-2PL
   ‘We went there for ourselves.’

3) bi əər-t-əə šin xubcas ab-aa-bi
   I self-DL-REF new clothes take-PAS-1
   ‘I bought new clothes for myself.’

3.2.1.5.4 Demonstrative pronouns

The demonstrative pronouns may be classified by number and by relative distance, that is, singular and plural and [+near] and [−near] as below. Note that the demonstrative pronouns are the same as the third persons of the personal pronoun. Although we have only few examples of the demonstrative pronouns, we may conclude that it has the same declension system as the personal pronoun.

The case markers and the personal possessive markers are suffixed to the demonstrative pronoun bases.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Relative distance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>+ Near</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SG</td>
<td>ənə ‘this’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PL</td>
<td>əd nar ‘these’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1) ənə jam sayn gü
this road good INT
ənə dütü jam
this short road
‘Is this road good? This is a shortcut.’

(2) tər yamar nər-tee uul
that what kind of name-having mountain
‘What is the name of the mountain?’
tər kəntii xan bay-na
that Kentii xan(name) be-PRE
‘That is Kentii xan (mountain).’

3.2.1.5.5 Interrogative pronouns

The following interrogative pronouns were identified in the data; /ali/ ‘which’, /kaaguur/ ‘where, (along) which way’, /kaan~xaan/ ‘where’, /kaašaa~kaašaa/ ‘to where’, /kəčineen/ ‘how much’, /kəd(ən)/ ‘how many’, /kəddüggər/ ‘which one (in a series)’, /kədiid/ ‘when’, /kəjəə/ ‘when’, /kən/ ‘who’, /kər/ ‘how, to what extent’, /yamar/ ‘what kind of’, /yuu/ ‘what’. Case and possessiveness may be marked on certain interrogative pronouns. Some examples of the real usages are:

(1) ta kaan-aas ir-sən-t
you(POL) where-ABL come-VNP-2POL
‘Where have you come from?’

(2) odoo kaaguur yaba-ka-t
now where to go-VNF-2POL
‘Where are you going now?’

(3) tanayx am bül kəd-üül-əə-t
yours family how many-COL-REF-2POL
Linguistic description of the Mongol Khamnigan spoken in Northeastern Mongolia

'How many people are there all together in your family?'

(4) odoo kəntee aymag-t kamnigan kün kər olon now xentii aimag-DL Khamnigan people how many bay-na be-PRE

'How many Khamnigan people are there in Kentii aimag, now?'

(5) tom ny kədən nasu-tee big 3 how many age-having

'How old is your big child?'

(6) ünü ny kədii price 3 how much

'How much is the price of it?'

(7) ta yuu kii-dəg-t you(POL) what do-VNH-2POL

'What kind of work are you doing?'

(8) či kən či you who 2

'Who are you?'

(9) či kəjəə ənd ir-əə-či you when here come-PAS-2

'When did you come here?'

3.2.1.5.6 Indefinite pronouns

The indefinite pronoun is derived by either attaching the concessive particle /č/ or adjoining the word /nəgən/ ‘one’, having the meaning of concessiveness, to the interrogative pronoun. Case is marked on the interrogative part of the word.

(1) namaas əər kən č mədə-ka-güy I(ABL) other who CONC know-VNF-NEG

‘Nobody knows except me.’

(2) gər-t-əə buca-xa jam-d-aa house-DL-REF return-VNF road-DL-REF kən-tee č taraa-ba-güy-bi who-COM CONC encounter-PAS-NEG-1

‘I saw no one on the way back home.’
3.2.1.6 Verb

A verb may be found in three different forms or states; (1) a finite verb of a sentence, which is the predicate of the whole sentence (2) a non-finite verb, usually called a converb, which serves as a predicate of a non-finite clause, (3) a verbal noun.

3.2.1.6.1 Finite verb

Finite verbs may be divided into two classes; finite verbs of an indicative sentence, and those of an imperative-optative sentence. Tense and aspect, person, and certain moods are marked on the finite verb of a indicative sentence. Mood and person are marked on the finite verb of an imperative-optative sentence.

3.2.1.6.1.1 Tense and aspect

The present and past tenses and progressive, perfective, and imperfective aspects are identified. The present, past tenses and perfective, imperfective aspects are marked by suffixing a grammatical morpheme which usually denotes tense and aspect at the same time. The progressive aspect is marked usually by a “converbal form of a verb + finite form of a copula verb”.

3.2.1.6.1.1.1 Present imperfective

Present imperfective tense/aspect is expressed by suffixing /-na/ to the stem of a finite verb. It has allomorphs [-na], [-nə], and [-no] which are decided by [± back] vowel harmony with the stem vowel. It has free variant [-n].

(1) ta kaan amdra-na-t
    you(POL) where live-PRE-2POL

    ‘Where do you live?’
Linguistic description of the Mongol Khamnigan spoken in Northeastern Mongolia

(2) minyee mori qər-t-əə bay-na
my horse house-DL-REF be-PRE
‘My horse is at home.’

(3) nükür tany qər-t-əə bay-na gü
husband 2POL house-DL-REF be-PRE INT
‘Is your husband at home?’

(4) ənd tany əbd-nə gü
here 2POL ache-PRE INT
‘Does it ache here?’ (literally ‘Is here of yours aching?’)

3.2.1.6.1.1.2 Future imperfective
In some other Mongolic languages such as Khalkha, future/imperfective tense/aspect is usually marked by the same morpheme as the present/imperfect tense/aspect marker. It should be the same in Khamnigan but future/imperfective tense/aspect marking is thoroughly reliant on verbal noun suffixes in the data.

3.2.1.6.1.1.3 Past perfective
Past perfective is marked by suffixing /-ba/ (-ba, -bə, -bo), /-laa/ (-laa, -ləə, -loo), or /-jee/\(^{14}\) to the verbal stem. Although our data does not seem big enough to tell the difference between the past perfective markers, or find all the allomorphs of each morpheme, it seems that /-ba/ denotes “simple past”, /-laa/ “immediate past”, and /-jee/ “narrative past” as those Khalkha equivalents.

\(^{14}\) [-čee] is also expected, but not found in the data.
A Study of the Mongol Khamnigan Spoken in Northeastern Mongolia

According to the news, it snowed much in Ulaanbaatar.

3.2.1.6.1.1.4 Present progressive
The present progressive tense/aspect is marked by “verbal stem-converbal suffix + copula verb in present imperfective form”. The copula verb is shortened to [-ii-] as in #idə-jii-nə-bi# of example (2), thus it may be better if we name /-jii-/ as “progressive marker”.

(1) mal sürüg tany targan saykan jusa-ǰ
cattle herd 2POL fat fine pass summer-CONI
be-PRE ꜌NT
‘Is your herd passing the summer healthy and fine?’

(2) odoo bi kool-oo idə-jii-nə-bi
now I meal-REF eat-PRO-PRE-1
‘I am eating a meal now.’

3.2.1.6.1.5 Past progressive
The past progressive tense/aspect is supposed to be marked by “verbal stem-converbal suffix + copula verbal stem-past perfective marker” or “verbal stem-converbal suffix + progressive marker-past perfective marker”. However, the past progressive tense/aspect marking is mostly done with the verbal noun form in the data as per example (2).

(1) minyee ir-kə-d tər unta-jii-bə
I(GEN) come-VNF-DL he sleep-PRO-PAS
‘He was sleeping when I came.’

(2) ab-iig ir-xə-d ny nom uŋši-jii-san-bi
father-ACC come-VNF-DL 3 book read-PRO-VNP-1
‘When father came, I was reading a book.’

3.2.1.6.1.2 Person
Person is marked by suffixing personal suffixes, either contracted
or full forms of the personal pronouns, to the finite verb when the subject is first person or second person, When the subject is third person, person is not marked.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1st</th>
<th></th>
<th>2nd</th>
<th></th>
<th>3rd</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>SG</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>SG</td>
<td>PL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SG</td>
<td>Exclusive</td>
<td>Inclusive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-bi</td>
<td>-bid</td>
<td>-bid</td>
<td>-či/-t</td>
<td>-t</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1) bür  cad-ba-bi
   completely  be satisfied-PAS-1
   'I am full.'
(2) ali  xasγ-iig onilo-bo-či
   which  part-ACC  aim at-PAS-2
   'Which part did you aim at?'
(3) jaaxan  yadara-ǰ  bay-na-bid
   a little  be tired-CONI  be-PRE-2PL
   'We are a little bit tired.'
(4) manuus  kamt  tamix  tata-ba-bid
   we(EXC) together  tobacco  smoke-PAS-2PL
   'We smoked together.'
(5) taanuud  tamix  tata-xa-t
   you(PL)  tobacco  smoke-VNF-2PL
   'You(PL) smoke.'
(6) tər  morin-oos-oo una-ba
   he  horse-ABL-REF  fall-PAS
   'He fell from his own horse.'
(7) tədəd  tamix  tata-na
   they  tobacco  smoke-PRE
   'They smoke.'

3.2.1.6.1.3 Mood
3.2.1.6.1.3.1 Imperative-Optative mood
Various imperative-optative mood markers are suffixed to the
verbal stem. The following morphemes are identified in the data.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person &amp; number</th>
<th>Morpheme</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 SG</td>
<td>-suy</td>
<td>decision</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1SG</td>
<td>-gtbi</td>
<td>polite notice</td>
<td>-gtii (polite request)/ +/-bi (1st person singular)/. Khalkha and Buryat do not have it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1SG</td>
<td>-yəgtbi</td>
<td>polite notice</td>
<td>-yə (volition)/ +/-gtii (polite request)/ +/-bi (1st person singular)/. Khalkha and Buryat do not have it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>-yi</td>
<td>volition</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-∅</td>
<td>immediate command</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-aaree (-aaree/-əəree/-ooree)</td>
<td>prescription</td>
<td>Have the notion of a somewhat delayed command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-gtii</td>
<td>polite request</td>
<td>Buryat has -gtii/, but Khalkha does not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-yəgtii</td>
<td>persuasion</td>
<td>-yi (volition)/ +/-gtii (polite request)/. Khalkha and Buryat do not have it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-aərəgtii (-əərəgtii)</td>
<td>polite prescription</td>
<td>-aaree (prescription)/+/-gtii (polite request)/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>-aaryəgtii (-əəryəgtii)</td>
<td>polite persuasion</td>
<td>-aaree (prescription)/+/-yi (volition)/-gtii (polite request)/. Khalkha and Buryat do not have it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>-g</td>
<td>permission</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>-tugay</td>
<td>benediction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The simple immediate imperative is marked by a zero suffix. Thus only the verbal stem appears on the surface.

(1) bi  cay  uu-suy
    I  tea  drink-VOL
'I will have (drink) tea.'

(2) daraa  ny  bi  buda-gtbi
next  3  I  shoot-POL
'I will shoot next time.'

(3) sudasan-ee  tany  coxilt-iig  üj-yəgtbi
pulse-GEN  2POL  beat-ACC  see-POL
'Let me check your pulse.'

(4) ənd  suu-cgaa-yi
here  sit-MUL-VOL
'Let us sit here.'

(5) duu  duula-ø  æsbəl  bújig  bújigl-ø
sing  sing-imp  if  not  dance  dance-imp
'Sing a song. Or dance a dance.'

(6a) manuus-tee  xamt  yaba-aaree
we(EXC)-COM  together  go-PRE
'Go with us.'

(6b) namad  jakia  bič-əəree
1-DL  letter  write-PRE
'Write a letter to me.'

(7) ta  oro-gtii
you(POL)  enter-POL
'Would you please come in.'

(8) koy-uul-aa  kamt  yaba-yəgtii
two-COL-REF  together  go-POL
'Let the two of us go together.'

(9a) palitoo-g-oo  tayl-aarəgtii
overcoat-ACC-REF  take off-POL
'Would you please take off your overcoat.'

(9b) namayg  bitgii  jod-ooryəgtii
I(ACC)  NEG  beat-POLPER
'Do not beat me please.'

(10) təd  ənd  irə-ə-iig  xüs-əəsee  irə-g
they here  come-VNF-ACC  want-CONC  come-PER3
'If they want to come here, let them come.'
A Study of the Mongol Khamnigan Spoken in Northeastern Mongolia

(11) san-san bükün tany sətgəkəčilə-n
think-VNP all 2POL think-CONM
bütə-xə bol-tugay
complete-VNF become-BEN
‘Let all of your matters be fulfilled as you wish!’

Sometimes, the emphatic aspect marking particle, personal possessive marker, interrogative marker, or person marker may appear after the imperative-optative mood marker as in example (12), (13), (14).

(12) gar büü kürü-l-či
hand NEG reach-EMP-2
‘Do not touch with your hand!’

(13) manay ulus manda-tugay ny
we(EXC)-GEN country rise-BEN 3
‘Cheers to our nation!’ (lit. ‘Let our country rise!’)

(14) uu-xa yüm ügü-gtbi gü
drink-VNF thing give-POL INT
‘May I offer you something to drink?’

Certain imperative-optative meanings are expressed in some other ways. They may be a polite question as in example (15a), a predicate in verbal noun imperfective form as in example (15b), or by suffixing the /-xmana gü/ construction after the verbal stem to denote the ‘persuasion’ as in (15c).

(15a) buuga-ee maken-aas-aa nadad jaaxan
deer-GEN meat-ABL-REF I(DL) a little
ügü-na-t gü
giv-PRE-2POL INT
‘Would you like to give me some venison, please?’

(15b) či gurban üdür-ee dotor ənə nom-iig
you three day-GEN inside this book-ACC
bügüd-ii ny uņši-j duusqa-xa-či
all-ACC 3 read-CONI finish-VNF-2
‘You are to read through this book within three days.’
(15c) kamt nom unši-xamana gü
together book read-PER INT
'Shall we read a book together?'

3.2.1.6.2 Non-finite verbs
Grammatical suffixes with various meanings are placed at the end of the verbal stem to form the non-finite verb, which serves as the predicate of the dependent or coordinating clauses. The following morphemes are identified in the data.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Morpheme</th>
<th>Aspect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-j/-č</td>
<td>imperfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-aad (-əad/-ood)</td>
<td>perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-n</td>
<td>modal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-aasee (-aasee/-əasee)</td>
<td>conditional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-bal</td>
<td>conditional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-bč</td>
<td>concessive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tal (-tal/-tol/-təl)</td>
<td>terminal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-xaar</td>
<td>intention</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1) kaŋka-d oči-j üj-sən-t gü
Khankh-DL go-CONI see-VNP-2POL INT
'Have you been to Khankh (place),'

(2) gansük oy-g üngürü-n
Gansukh forest-ACC pass-CONM
surguuli-d-aa yaba-gči
school-DL-REF go-VNA
'Gansukh (name) goes to school via the forest. (lit. Gansukh is a one who goes to school passing the forest')

(3) üčügüdür bi nom ab-aad gər-t-əə
yesterday I book take-CONP house-DL-REF
ir-bə-bi
come-PAS-1
‘Yesterday I came home after I had bought a book.’

(4) ta sayn sur-aasee magta-gda-xa-t
you(POL) good learn-CONC praise-PM-VNF-2POL
‘If you learn well, you will be praised.’

(5) ta yaba-bal tany bi či bas yaba-ka-bi
you(POL) go-CONC 2 I even too go-VNF-1
‘If you go, I will go too.’

(6) bid tamix tata-bči tanuus tamix
we(INC) tobacco smoke-CONC you(PL) tobacco
tata-xa-güy-t
smoke-VNF-NEG-2PL
‘We smoke but you do not smoke. (lit. Although we smoke, you(PL) don’t smoke.)’

(7) cəcəγmaa nəənt duu duula-ɶ
Tsetsegmaa(name) once song sing-CONI
iklə-aasee duus-tal ny duula-gči
start-CONC finish-cont 3 sing-VNA
‘If Tsetsegmaa starts singing, she sings until she finishes.’

(8) tər anda-tee-gaa uulja-xaar tosgon-d
he friend-COM-REF meet-INT village-DL
ir-bə
come-PAS
‘He came to the village to see his friend.’

3.2.1.6.3 Verbal noun
Grammatical suffixes with various meanings are placed at the end of the verbal stem to form the verbal noun. The verbal noun may serve as predicate of a clause, a whole sentence, a nominal phrase, or an attribute of nominals. The following morphemes are identified in the data.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Morpheme</th>
<th>Aspect</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-ka (-ka/-kə/-xa/-xa)</td>
<td>future imperfective</td>
<td>Also expresses present meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-san (-san/-sən/-son)</td>
<td>past perfective</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(g)aa</td>
<td>past imperfective, progressive present</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-dag</td>
<td>habitual action</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-gći</td>
<td>actor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1a) bi margaaši surguuli-d-aa yaba-xa-bi
I tomorrow school-DL-REF go-VNF-1
‘I will go to school tomorrow.’

(1b) tanuud tamix tata-ka-t
you(PL) tobacco smoke-VNP-2PL
‘You(PL) smoke.’

(1c) tiišee yaba-xa jam bay-gaa gü
tither go-VNF road be-VNI INT
‘Is there a road that goes in that direction?’

(1d) təd ənd irə-xə-iig xüs-əəsee ir(ə)-g
they here come-VNF-ACC want-CONC come-PER3
‘If they want to come here, let them come.’

(2a) bi üčügüdür ab-san nom-oo uçşı-ba-bi
I yesterday take-VNP book-REF read-PAS-1
‘I read a book which I bought yesterday.’

(2b) bidnuus üčügüdür nom uçşı-j tanuus
we(INC) yesterday book read-CONI you(PL)
üčügüdür jurag jur-san-t
yesterday picture paint-VNP-2PL
‘We read books and you drew pictures yesterday.’

(3a) tər minyee nom-iig nuu-gaa
he my book-ACC hide-VNI
‘He hid my book.’
(3b) tiišee yaba-xa jam bay-gaa gü
tither go-VNF road be-VNP INT
‘Is there a road that goes in that direction?’

(4) ta yuu kii-dəg-t
you(POL) what do-VNH-2POL
‘What kind of work (activity) are you doing?’

(5) bi surguuli dəər anda-tee-gaa kamt nom
I school over friend-COM-REF together book
unši-gči-bi
read-VNA-1
‘I am studying at school together with my friend. (lit. I am one who reads books with my own friend.)’

3.2.1.7 Adverbs

Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs. As we see in examples (1) and (2), the same word in the same phonological form may function as an adverb, an adjective, or a noun, as is the case in many Mongolian languages and dialects. Some of the usual means by which an adverb is derived from a noun is by suffixing instrumental case markers or other nominal suffixes.

(1) manar-ee nutag maši sayxan
we(EXC)-GEN native place very beautiful
‘Our native land is very beautiful.’

(2) üŋgür-sün šün ta sayxan noyrso-bo uu
pass-VNP night 2POL well sleep-PAS INT
‘Did you sleep well last night?’

(3) nuuc-aar
secret-INS
‘secretly’

(4) bi ganc-aar-aa yaba-gtbi
I single-INS-REF go-POL
‘I will go by myself.’

(5) bolgamj-tee yaba-aareegtii
cautions-having go-POL
'Watch out! (lit. 'Go with caution!')

3.2.1.8 Postpositions

There are certain words that come after nominals and verbal nouns, and are governed by various cases.

(1) boroo oro-ko-oos ümün yaba
    rain enter-VNF-ABL before go
    'Go before it rains'

(2) üd-əəs ümün
    noon-ABL before
    'before noon'

(3) üd-əəs xoyş
    noon-ABL after
    'afternoon'

(4) kədən konog-ee ümün dulaakan bay-san
    several day-GEN before warm be-VNP
    'It was warm just several days ago.'

Words of this part of speech found in the data are /adilkan/ 'alike', /boltol/ 'up to', /daraa/ 'after', /dəər/ 'on, above', /dooro/ 'below, under', /dotoro/ 'in, inside', /gadaa/ 'out, outside', /garee/ 'over', /koin/ 'after', /kürtər/ 'until', /orčim/ 'around, about', /šig/ 'like, as', /tukay/ 'about', /tüləə/ 'for'.

3.2.1.9 Particles

Negative, interrogative, concessive, corroborative, affirmative, speculative, emphatic, and modal particles are identified in the data. Negative particles are discussed in section 3.3.3. (Negation). Interrogative particles are discussed in section 3.3.4. (Interrogatives). For the concessive particle see 3.2.1.5.6 (Indefinite pronouns).

(1) galt tərəg küdülə-xə cag aray bol-oo-güy
    train move-VNF time rather become-VNI-NEG
‘It is not yet the time for the departure of the train.’

(2) ｇər-еe-xən  tany  бүгүд bayartеe  bay-na
    house-GEN-COL  2PL  all  happy  be-PRE
bij  əə
COR  SPE

‘All of the family members must be happy.’

(3) tiiməə  düü-g  бүгүд  l  külyee-jii-na
    yes  younger  brother-ACC  all  EMP  wait-PRO-PRE
bij  əə
COR  SPE

‘Yes, the whole family is waiting for him.’

3.2.1.10 Interjections

The following interjection words are found in the data.

(1) jaa  nokoy-goo  kori-yi
    INT  dog-REF  detain-VOL

‘Oh, yes. Restrain your dog please! (lit. ‘Well, let us keep
down your dog!’)

(2) χəəg  ono-čix-loo
    INT  hit-COM-PAS

‘Oh, I hit it!’

3.3 Syntactic description

3.3.1 Word order

The principal word order of the sentence is Subject-Object-
Predicate. Although we do not find any evidence of exceptions
to this principle in the data, word ordering must be relatively
free, considering that every constituent of a sentence has certain
devices which mark its role in the sentence and its relationships
with other constituents.

(1) aba many mod-oor nom-ee širee kii-bə
father 1PL wood-INS book-GEN table make-PAS
‘Our father made a table with wood.’

3.3.2 Conjunctions

3.3.2.1 Phrasal conjunctions

Phrases are conjoined by conjunction words such as /ba/ ‘and’, /bolon/ ‘and’, /təgəəd/ ‘then, thus’ The numeral /xoyor/ ‘two’ functions as a conjunction word after the second of the two nominals.

(1) suragči ba bagš
pupil and teacher
‘a pupil and a teacher’
(2) boro gürəəs bolon buga bay-na
roe deer and deer be-PRE
‘There are roe deer and deer.’
(3) ijii aba xoyor yari-lca-jii-na
mother father two talk-REC-PRO-PRE
‘Mother and father are talking to each other.’
(4) aba ijii əkənər təgəəd okin kübűün bii
fater mother wife then daughter son be(PRE)
‘There is my father, mother, wife, then daughter and son.’

3.3.2.2 Sentential conjunctions

3.3.2.2.1 Coordination

Coordination takes place between two independent clauses with or without the conjunction word. In example (1), there is no coordinator but two sentences are semantically well connected. In example (2) the adverb /əsbaʃ/ ‘if not’ functions as the coordinator. Such coordinators as /əsbaʃ/ ‘if not’, /gəbči/ ‘but’, /karin~xarin/
A Study of the Mongol Khamnigan Spoken in Northeastern Mongolia

‘however’.

(1) əmbəə oroose-oos ir-əə gü
grandmother Russia-ABL come-PAS INT
šaŋkay-gaas ir-əə gü
China-ABL come-PAS INT
‘Did your grandmother come from Russia or China?’

(2) ik bay-na gü əsbəl baga bay-na gü
much be-PRE INT if not little be-PRE INT
‘Is it a lot or a little? (lit. Is it (your urine) a lot? If not a little?)’

3.3.2.2.2 Subordination

The most prevalent means of expressing subordination is through the use of grammatical suffixes that are attached to the verbal stem of the predicate verb of the dependent clause, also called a converb, as we discussed in the morphology section. An example is given in (1).

(1) ulaanbaatar-aas mürün dayr-aad
Ulaanbaatar(place)-ABL Mürüng(place) pass-CONP
ir-sən-bi
come-VNP-1
‘I came out from Ulaanbaatar and dropped by at Murun on the way here.’

Adverbial phrases are another device for subordination, as we can see in example (2).

(2) aba-iig ir-ə-xə-d ny nom uŋši-jii-san-bi
father-ACC come-VNF-DL 3 book read-PRO-VNP-1
‘When father came back, I was reading book (=studying).’

Another mean of coordination is to embed by suffixing morphemes to the verbal stem, to make the predicate of the embedded sentence a verbal noun as in example (3).

(3) bi üčügüdür ab-san nom-oо uŋši-ba-bi
I yesterday take-VNP book-REF read-PAS-1
I read a book that I bought yesterday.'

It seems that quotations that use a conjugated form of the verb */gə-*/ 'to say' are also a remarkable method for coordination, as in example (4).

(4) bi aab-iig ir-bal goyi axaa gə-j
    I father-ACC com-CONC nice SPE say-CONI
    bodo-bo-bi
    think-PAS-1

    'I thought it would have been nice if father had come.'

3.3.3 Negation

Negation is marked by negative particles. The following particles are identified in the data.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Negative markers</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-(ü)güy</td>
<td>placed after nominals, verbal nouns, finite verbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biš</td>
<td>placed after nominals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>büü</td>
<td>placed before imperative-optative verbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bitgii</td>
<td>placed before imperative-optative verbs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the object of negation is existence, */-(ü)güy/* is placed after the verbal noun or the noun, as in example (1a) and (1b). The striking difference in negation from that of Khalkha is shown in example (1c) where the indicative verbs are negated by the negative marker */-güy/* . */-(ü)güy/* is used for sentential negation like the English negative reply "No!", as in (1d).

(1a) manuus tanar-iig jodo-xo-güy-bid
    we(EXC) you(PL)-ACC beat-VNF-NEG-1PL

    'We will not beat you (PL).'
(1b) mašiin ūgüy bolkoor undürkaan kürtər
    car NEG as a result Undurkhaan upto
    aǰil-d yaba-xa-d kəjuu bay-na
    work-DL go-VNF-DL difficult be-PRE
    ‘It is difficult to commute to Undurkhaan without a car.’

(1c) ūngū ny sətgəl-d taala-gda-na-güy
    color 3 mind-DL like-PM-PRE-NEG
    ‘I do not like the color. (lit. The color is not favored (by me.).’

(1d) či ücütgüdür surguli-d-aa yaba-aa-güy
    you yesterday school-DL-REF go-PAS-NEG
    bij či ūgüy yaba-laa 1
    COR 2 NEG go-PAS EMP
    ‘You did not go to school yesterday, did you? Oh, I did go.’

When the object of negation is quality or content, /biš/ is placed after the nominal, including adjectives, as in examples (2a) and (2b).

(2a) bi suraɣči biš-bi
    I pupil NEG-1
    ‘I am not a pupil.’

(2b) tər üy-d tər küüg xaraaxan kərəkən biš
    that time-DL that child barely pretty NEG
    bay-san
    be-VNP
    ‘That child was not pretty at that time.’

When the verb is in the imperative-optative mood, the negative marker /büü/ or /bitgii/ is placed before the verb as in (3a) and (3b).

(3a) tər alim-iig büü id
    that apple-ACC NEG eat
    ‘Do not eat that apple!’

(3b) təɾən-iig bitgii jod-ooree
    he-ACC NEG beat-PRE
    ‘Do not beat him!’
3.3.4 Interrogatives

In “Yes/No questions”, the interrogative particle /gü/ is placed at the end of the sentence as in example (1a), which has the same phonological shape as that of Buryat’s interrogative particle. However, Khalkha type /-uu/ occasionally appears as in (1b), probably because of the Khalkha influence.

(1a) či üçügüdür surguuli-d-aa yaba-san-či gü you yesterday school-DL-REF go-VNP-2 INT
‘Did you go to school yesterday?’
(1b) ta sayn bay-na-t gü sayn ta you(POL) good be-PRE-2POL INT good you(POL)
sayn bay-na üü
good be-PRE INT
‘How do you do? I am fine. How do you do?’

In “Wh-word questions”, the interrogative particle /-be/ is placed at the end of the sentence as in (2) and (3). However, it is often dropped, even when the predicate is nominal as in (4). It has allomorphs [-be] and [-we]. The former occurs after the consonants /-b/, /-m/, and /-n/ as is the case in Khalkha.

(2) kəntee aymag kədii-d
Khentii aimag(place) how many-DL
bay-guula-gda-san be
be-CM-PM-VNP INT
‘In which year, was Khentii aimag established?’
(3) kəntee aymag-ee nutag dəbsgər-ee kəmğee
Khentii aimag(place)-GEN territory-GEN size
kəɾ be
how INT
‘What is the size of the territory of Khentii aimag?’
(4) ta yamar mərgəjil-tee-t
you(POL) what kind of profession-having-2POL
‘What kind of profession are you in?’

3.3.5 Passive

Although we do not have much evidence in the data, it is possible to state that passivity is expressed by the construction “nominal phrase-DL + verbal stem-PM/-gda-”, as we can see in examples (1b) and (2b). Consultants often chose different verbs from the active construction to make the passive construction as we see in (1a) and (1b).

(1a) aŋčin tuulay abala-ba
    hunter  rabbit  hunt-PAS
    ‘A hunter hunted a rabbit.’

(1b) tuulay aŋčin-d bari-gda-ba
    rabbit  hunter-DL  catch-PM-PAS
    ‘A rabbit was caught by a hunter.’

It seems that the “Noun Phrase-DL” part of the passive construction may be omitted when it is already evident, as we see in (2b).

(2a) bi koŋkon-ee duu soŋso-(o)bi
    I    bell-GEN  sound  hear-PAS-1
    ‘I heard a bell sound.’

(2b) alasa-d koŋkon-ee duu soŋso-gda-ba
    far-DL bell-GEN  sound  hear-PM-PAS
    ‘From far away, a bell sound was heard.’

Sometimes, passive marker comes with causative marker simply yielding the passive meaning as in (3).
3.3.6 Causative

Causativity is expressed by infixing the causative markers /-uula-/, /-1ga-/, and /-aa-/ to the verbal stem.

(1a) bi us abčira-aa-bi
    I water bring-PAS-1
    ‘I brought water.’

(1b) ijii namaar us abčira-uula-ba
    mother I(INS) water bring-CM-PAS
    ‘My mother made me bring water.’

(2a) /ongoyxo/ ‘to open (up)/to be opened’
(2b) /ongoylgoxo/ ‘to open’

(3a) /iildəkə/ ‘to remain, to stay, to be left behind’
(3b) /iildəəkə/ ‘to keep, to retain’

Consultants often chose different verbs from the active construction to make the causative construction as we see (4a) and (4b).

(4a) minyee düüi surguuli-d-aa oči-bo
    I-GEN younger brother school-DL-REF go-PAS
    ‘My younger brother went to (his own) school.’

(4b) ijii düü-g surguuli-d ny
    mother younger brother-ACC school-DL 3
    yaba-uul-ba
    go-CM-PAS
    ‘(My) mother let (my) younger brother go to his own school.’
Appendix 1

Vocabulary

1. Words are listed in the following order: a, b(=/p/), c(=/tsʰ/), č(=/ʨʰ/), d(=/t/), e, ə, g(=/k/), i, j(=/ʦ/), ħ(=/ʨ/), k(=/kʰ/), l, ɬ, m, n, ŋ, ð, p(=/pʰ/), r(=/ɾ/), s, ś(=/ɕ/), t(=/tʰ/), u, ŭ, w, x, y.

2. Each word is presented with the following information: Phonological transcription # Meaning (supplement)

3. Ar. = Arabic; Bu. = Khorī Buryat; Ch. = Chinese; Ev. = Evenki; Fr. = French; Ja. = Japanese; Ka. = Kalmyk; Kh. = Khalkha; Ko. = Korean; Ma. = Manchu; Ru. = Russian; Sa. = Sanskrit; Ti. = Tibetan; WM = Written Mongolian; = See also

/a/

aab father, dad (Kh. aab) = aab
aaginta (small) shop (< Ru. are̓нт ‘agent’) (Kh. агент; Bu. агент; WM agyent)
aajugu slow (in action) (Kh. аажуу; WM aγaiγu) = aaju
aaju slow in action, gentle of slope (Kh. аажуу; WM aγaiγu) = aajugu
aalja spider (Kh. аалз; Bu. аалза; WM aγalja)
aba¹ father, dad (Bu. aba) = aab
aba² hunting
A Study of the Mongol Khamnigan Spoken in Northeastern Mongolia

abaačika to take, to take away, to go off with (Kh. аваачих; Bu. абашаха; WM abačiqu)
abaceer officer (< Ru. офицер) (Kh. офицер [afitseːr]; Bu. офицер; WM opičer) ← oboceer
abag axay father’s brother (Kh. авра ах; Bu. абга ахай; WM abaga aq-a)
abag άgčee нüxüř father’s sister’s husband ← abaga άgčiin нüxüř
abag άgčiin нüxüř father’s sister’s husband ← abag άgčee нüxüř
abagaldee snake (It may just be a confused reply from our consultant) (Kh. авгалдай ‘larva, grub, nymph’; Bu. абгалдай ‘larva, grub, nymph’; WM abagaldey ‘larva, chrysalis’)
abagaljín1 wife of father’s brother; It looks like it is a combination of abaga ‘father’s sibling’ and the feminine marker -ljin. (Kh. авга бэргэн ‘wife of father’s brother’; Bu. абга бэригэн ‘id.’; WM abaga bergen ‘id.’) ← abagaljín2
abagaljín2 father’s sister. (Kh. авра эгч ‘father’s sister’; Bu. абра άгэшэ ‘id.’; WM abar-a egeči ‘id.’) Our consultant has abag άgčee нüxüř and abag άgčiin нüxüř, both for ‘father’s sister’s husband’. It is therefore quite possible for her to have abag άgč ‘father’s sister’ too, which is the Khamnigan variant of Khalkha авра άгч. ← abagaljín1
abaruχu to rescue, to save (Kh. аврах; Bu. абарха; WM aburaqu)
abčirka to bring
abdara chest, trunk, box
abiyaas talent, gift. (Kh. авьяас; Bu. абьяас; WM abiyas)
abxu to take, to get (Kh. авах; Bu. абаха; WM abqu)
ačaa buulgaxa to unload the load
ačaanee тэрэг lorry, truck
ačee luggage, load (Kh. ачаа; Bu. ашаа; WM ačiy-a) ← ačaa in ačaa buulgaxa and ačaanee тэрэг.
ači küü grandson (Kh. ач хүү; Bu. aša хүбүүн; WM ači kübegün)
ači ükin granddaughter (Kh. ач охин; Bu. aša басаган; WM ači ökin)
ačika to load (Kh. ачих; Bu. ашааха; WM ačiqu)
ačixa to load (Kh. ачих; Bu. ашааха; WM ačiqu)
Appendix 1: Vocabulary

**Vocabulary**

**ada** devil, demon (Kh. ад; Bu. ада; WM ada)

**adilkan** same (Kh. адилхан; Bu. адлихан; WM adaliqan)

**aduguusun amitan** wild beast

**adura** ceiling (Kh. адар; WM adar/adair)

**aduučin [atokʰiŋ]** horse breeder

**aduun sürūg** horse herd

**agaar** air (Kh. араап; Bu. араап; WM аγар)

**agaari** air (Kh. араап; Bu. араап; WM аγар)

**agaraad** field attached to a home site, kitchen garden (< Ru. огород)

**agi** wormwood, mugwort, artemisia

**agšeesan cagaan budaa** boiled rice (Kh. агшeesан цагаан будаа)

**agšixa** to contract, to shrink əχ xagšixa

**agtu araa** wisdom tooth

**agtulusan mori** gelding

**agtulux** to geld, to castrate

**aguu ik** great (Kh. аруу ик; WM аγуу яке)

**aguulga** content, contents

**aguy** cave

**ajaragan takyee** rooster, cock

**ajarogo** stallion

**ajo jirgal** happiness

**ajo jirgalan** happiness

**ajo jirgalatee** happy, lucky

**ajo muutee** unlucky

**ajogüy** unhappy, unlucky

**ajotee** lucky

**ajiglaxa** to observe

**ajil** work

**ajilee üdür** workday

**ajillaxa** to work

**ajilsaga** diligent

**aka** 1. older (than) 2. elder brother

**akay** elder brother

**alaga bolko** to disappear
alagadaxu to slap
alagtuu jackdaw
alaku to kill
alasee xaraqgu long way
alaxu hammer
alban ajil official business, public duty
alban bayguulga government and public offices
alban gajar public office, office
alban kaagči official, government employee
alban xaagči official, government employee
aldaa mistake
aldaa üg slip of the tongue
aldar name
aldar nər fame
aldartee famous, well-known
aldu distance between the tips of the middle fingers of the two hands extended to either side
algu palm ρ xalgu
alguurlaxa to delay
alima apple
aliris cowberry
alkuxa to walk
altay¹ seemingly, apparently
altay² Altai mountains
altu gold
am bül family member
amalalt promise ρ xamalalt
amalaxa to promise, to pledge
amar amagalan peaceful, quiet
amarag lover
amaralt rest
amaraltiin üdür holiday
amarkan easy
amaruk to take a rest
amasuxu to taste
ambuura  warehouse (< Ru. амбар) (Kh. амбаар; Bu. амбаар)
amdiral  living, life (Kh. амьдрал; Bu. амидарал; WM amidural)
amdiraku  to live, to reside, to dwell
ami  life
amia koroloxo  to commit suicide
amid bodis  living being
amidraka  to live, to reside, to dwell
amidrax  to live, to reside, to dwell
amidraka  to live, to reside, to dwell
amisgal  breath
amisgalka  to breathe
amitan  animal
amitanee sabar  claw
amjilt  success
amjilt gargaxu  to success
amjixa  to succeed doing something in time
amta  taste
amta ügüy  tasteless
amttay  delicious
amu  mouth
amu cangoxo  to be thirsty
amuguy  bit (harness) (Kh. амгай; WM amayai)
anda  friend (Kh. анд; Bu. анда; WM anda)
anduu  friend (Kh. анд; Bu. анда; WM anda)
anisga  eyelid
anjis  plough
anjisduxu  to plow
anyɔxu  to close the eyes
añ  hunting
añ amitan  game animal
añ aŋnuur  hunting
añčin  hunter  = angüüčin
añgaakay  fledgling, nestling
añgay üs  fur
añgay üsəər kiisan kubcas  fur clothes
A Study of the Mongol Khamnigan Spoken in Northeastern Mongolia

әнгэй үссөөр қийээн палитуу фуур коат палтөө
әңгі class 2337
әңгүүчиң hunter (Bu. ангуушан) аңчің
әңгүүчиң кутага hunting knife
әңкәарку to pay attention to
әңкілуун fragrant, aromatic
әңнәк to hunt
ара тала in the back, in the rear
араа шидү молар tooth
арааҷү radio (< Ru. радио)
арабан саий ten million
арабай barley
арabdугаар сар October
араго means, method, way (Our Khalkha member, Pürevsüren’s pronunciation was near to [арәк].)
arамо novel (< Ru. рома'н)
arба ten
арбаас даош less than ten
арбаас дууш more than ten
арбадугаар tenth
арбан долоо seventeen
арбан дүрб fourteen
арбан гурба thirteen
арбан жүргээ sixteen
арбан койор twelve
арбан койор нүгләа гөөө [арвөө кʰәйөр нүгләа көөө] duodenum
арбан койордугаар сар December
арбан мӣгу ten thousand arban мөөга, түмө
арбан мөөга ten thousand arban мөөгу, түмө
арбан найм eighteen
арбан нәгә eleven
арбан нәгәдүүәр eleventh
арбан нәгәсүүәр сар November
арбан таба fifteen
арбан юис nineteen
arbo ten
arčixa to wipe, to rub, to wipe off
ard tümün people, masses
argamjaa tether
argul dried cattle dung (Kh. аргал; Bu. аргал; WM argal)
ari spirits, strong drink 👩‍🍳 ariki, arki
ariki spirits, strong drink 👨‍🍳 arik, arki
arilgaxu to get rid of, to sweep away, to remove
ariljaa barter, trade
arisu skin
arisu šir leather
arisun kubcas leather clothes
ariutgaxa to disinfect, to purify, to clean up
arki spirits, strong drink 👨‍🍳 arik, arki
arki garxa to become sober
arsoloŋ lion (Kh. арслан; Bu. арсалаң; WM arslan—arsalan)
arula shaft (of a cart)
aruula island
asga rock
asuuk to ask
asuult question
asuuxu to turn on (a light, a machine, etc.)
asuxu to catch fire, to ignite, to start burning
asxaj čutgaxa to spill, to pour
ašig profit, gain
ašig garku to profit, to gain
ašig orolog profit
ašigtay profitable, beneficial
atan təməə castrated he-camel
axa to be, to exist
axay düü (elder and younger) brothers, elder brother and younger sister
ayaarkan slow, gentle
ayaga bowl, cup
ayaganee alčuur dish towel, dish-cloth
ayaku to be afraid of (Kh. aйх; Bu. айха; WM аyuqu/ayiqu)
ayaŋga thunder
ayaŋga buuk to thunder
ayaŋga buux to thunder
ayilaka to sing, to hum
ayilal journey, expedition, travel
ayilčlax to visit
ayilguu dialect, melody
ayinčin wayfarer, traveler
ayindaa automatically, naturally, in the course of things
aymag province, aimag
aymaxay timid, coward, fearful
aymdraka to live, to reside, to dwell
aymšigtay fearful
ayuul ügüy safe
ayuultay dangerous

/b/

baabgay bear
baaka to excrete
baakalday bear (Bu. баахалдай)
baambaru torch (Kh. бамбар)
baara¹ pot = waara
baara² roof tile
baasan ğarigi Friday (< Ti. pa-sangs + Sa. graha)
baasu excrement (WM bayasu)
baatūra hero (Kh. бaaтар; Bu. баарар; WM бayatur)
bačiməduu impatient, hasty, flustered, worried, confused
bačimyəduu
bačimyəduu impatient, hasty, flustered, worried, confused
bačiməduu
badayrxa to tingle, to have pins and needles = bodayrx (Kh. бадайрх; WM badayiraqu)
Appendix 1: Vocabulary

bag¹ mask
bag² the administrative unit under a sum.
bagā balčir young, tender, infant
bagaji tool, implement
bagasuxa to decrease, to decline (Kh. барасах; WM баγаску)
baglaa bundle
bagš teacher
bagšlax to teach
bagteer bacteria (< Ru. бакте́рия) (Kh. бактери Bu. бактери)
bagtuux to include in (Kh. багтаах)
bagu little, small
bagun pillar (Kh. багана; Bu. бахана; WM баγан-a)
baja [patsa] husband of a sister of one’s wife (Kh. баг; Bu. база;
WM бага)
baka frog (Kh. баг; Bu. баха; WM баq-a)
baki pincers ḝq bakyе
bakiraka to shout, to scream
bakiryəka to shout, to scream
bakyе pincers ḝq баки
balčig swamp, marsh
balkarxu to admire, to be proud of (It may be simple pronunciation error)
bandaŋ sandul bench, chair, stool
banja board, plank (Kh. банз; Bu. банза; WM bangja)
banjul [pantsol] skirt (< Sa. Ti. pанcalи) (Kh. банджал; Bu. банджала;
WM банжал)
banka [paŋkʰа] bank (a institute for saving, loan, etc.) (< Ru. банк) (Kh. банк; Bu. банк; WM bangki)
baraa goods, merchandise
barag almost
bardamnuxu [pard amendment] to brag, to boast (Kh. бардамнах;
Bu. бардамлаха; WM bardamnaqu)
barika to catch ḝq барixa
barilgu bayšин building
barimal sculpture, statue ḝq barimjəl
barimtlaku to follow, to act according to, to adhere to, to stick to
barimyəl sculpture, statue ☞ barimal
barixa to catch ☞ barika
barixu¹ to restrain, to hold
barixu² to pick up
bariyəxu to build (a house) ☞ bariyəxu
baru tiger
baruun right, west
baruun tal right side, west side
baruun tald in the right side, in the west side
baruun tuušee to the right, rightward
baruunta in the west
baryəxu to build (a house) ☞ baryəxu
basə also
basamjilaxa to look down on, to scorn, to despise
bat bükü firm, solid, strong
battay definite, firm, reliable, solid
baxaduxu to be proud, to be pleased
baxalajuura pharynx
baxarkuxu to admire, to be proud of (Kh. бахархах)
baxdux to be proud, to be pleased (Kh. бахдах)
bayanbürd oasis
bayar kürgəxə to congratulate
bayar naasam [pajár naːsam] festival (Kh. баяр наадам; Bu. [баяр] наадан; WM bayar nayadum)
bayar yosolee üdür national holiday
bayarluxu to be happy, to be glad, to be pleased
bayartee bayku glad, happy, pleased
bayartee üyl yabadal joyous event
bayastuku to be glad, to be happy, to be pleased (Kh. баярлах)
baycəəx to investigate (Kh. байцаах)
baydal state, condition, situation
bayguulka to build, to construct
bayin kün rich person
bayku to be, to exist, to have ☞ bayxa
Appendix 1: Vocabulary

bayldagč soldier (Kh. байлдагч ‘private (military rank)’
bayn uu Hello?
bayrlal location
bayšiŋ house, building
bayxa to be, to exist, to have ə bayku
bayxa ügüy not to be, not to exist, not to have ə bayxagüy
bayxagüy not to be, not to exist, not to have ə bayxa ügüy
bəalyee gloves
bəlbisən əkənər widow
bəlbisən ərə widower
bəlčəar pasture ə bolčeer
bolčeerlüülkə to pasture (Kh. бэлчээрлэх) ə bilčeerlüülkə
bələg present, gift
bələg dursgal souvenir
bələgləχ to present
bələn colkoob cash ə məlan colkoob
bəlgée karicca sexual intercourse
bəljig (finger) ring (Kh. бөлзөг)
bəlküüs waist
bəltgəx to prepare
bəri bride
bəri düüi husband’s younger brother’s wife
bəri okin daughter-in-law
bərīgən elder brother’s wife
bərīgən əgəči husband’s elder brother’s wife
bətgee do not (Negative imperative marker) (Kh. битгий; WM bitegei)
bəya body ə biiya
bəya jasaxa gajar toilet
bəyað abč yabaxa to carry a thing with one
bi I (1st person singular)
bicgan little, small, young
bicixan little, small, young
bicixan küüg baby, little child
bičigee širee desk
bičikə to write
bid we (hearer exclusive)
bidroo pail, bucket (< Ru. ведро’)
bii to be, to exist
biičin guest ≈ giičin
biir writing brush ≈ birə
biiyə body ≈ bayə
bij no doubt, surely
bilčeerlüülkə to pasture (Kh. бэлчээрлэх) ≈ bəlčeerlüülkə
bilčeekeə to graze, to pasture
bimba garigi Saturday (< Ti. spen-па + Sa. graha) (Kh. бямба гариг; Bu. бимба гарам; WM bimba gray) ≈ bimbyo garigi
bimbyo garigi Saturday (Kh. бямба гариг Bu. бимба гарам WM bimba gray) ≈ bimba garigi
birə writing brush ≈ biir
bodan gakay boar (Kh. бодон гахай Bu. бодон гахай WM bodong γaqai)
bodayrx [pɔdɛ:rχ] to tingle, to have pins and needles ≈ badayrx
boditee barimt fact, real fact
bodoko to think
bodol thought, idea, opinion ≈ bojol
bogin ištee jəətüü weeding hoe
bogin xugacaa short term
boginokon short
bogsoğ trash
bojol thought, idea, opinion ≈ bodol
bokir usnee koolee drain ≈ bokir usnee xoolee
bokir usnee xoolee drain ≈ bokir usnee koolee
bokirloxo to make dirty, to pollute
bolcuu arrowhead
bolčeer pasture ≈ бəлчээр
bolenyeeec hospital (< Ru. больни’ца)
bolobsorol education
bolobsrok to ripen ≈ bolobsroxo
bolobsroxo to ripen ≈ bolobsrok
bolgoomjiloxo to pay attention, to be careful
bolgoomjiloxo to pay attention, to be careful
bolomj [pɔlɔmdʃ] opportunity, possibility
boloxo [pɔlɔxɔ] to become
bolxo [pɔlxɔ] All right! (Kh. Болно!)
bolyəxo to stop, to give up (Kh. болих; WM boliqu)
boolo slave (Kh. боол)
boomto port, harbour
booxo to tie, to tie up, to bind, to bandage
borco borts, dried meat
bordoo¹ fertilizer, manure
bordoo² hay
bornee harrow (Kh. борной)
boro gürəəs roe deer
boro gürəəsnee myaka roe deer’s meat
boro šibuu sparrow
borogoxo to bark (For a dog)
boroneetxo to harrow (Kh. борнойдох)
boroo rain
boroo oroko to rain
boroomd noroxo to get wet by rain, to be exposed to rain
boroonne uliral rainy season
bosgo threshold of a door, doorsill
bosgoxo to erect
bosoko to stand
botogo camel calf
bömbərə drum <bömbörə
bömbörə drum <bömbərə
böö shaman
bööljik to vomit (Kh. боолжих)
bööljis vomit (Kh. боолжис)
böön yüma lump (Kh. боөн юм)
böörə kidney (Kh. боөр; Bu. боөрэ; WM böger-e)
böösö lice (Kh. боөс)
bucaaj ügük to give back, to send back
bucaj ırək  to come back
bucaj yabak  to go back
bucalagasan us  boiled water
buclamee  hot as boiled water, boiling (Kh. бұцлам)
budaa  grain, cereals
budaga  dye stuffs, dyes, color, paint (liquid color)
budaj šinkudaxa  to make up, to make one’s toilet (Kh. будаж шунхдах)
budan  mist, haze
budaxa  to dye
buga  1. deer 2. buck caa bugu
bugay aris  deer skin, buckskin
bugay cusan əbür  young antlers of the deer
bugay myaka  venison
buguy  wrist
buguybč  bracelet
bujara  dirty
buka gūrēas  aurochs
buku  bull
bulaan øjelkə  to invade, to encroach
bulaaxa  to rob, to capture, to take over
bulag  spring, fountain
bulağa  sable (Kh. булга; Bu. булган; WM bulaγ-a)
bulaka  to bury
bulama  a flattened cake
bulan¹  corner
bulan²  gulf, bay
bulčiń¹  muscle  buldičiń
bulčiń²  calf of the leg
buldičiń  muscle (It may be a simple pronunciation error) bulčiń
buliŋgyartee  turbid, cloudy (Kh. булингартай)
bulš  tomb
buluu cagaan jagas  carp
buma  hundred thousand
burgaas  willow, salix
buruu wrong
busad kün other people
butalaxa to boil (intransitive) (Kh. бүцлах)
butalgaxa to boil (transitive) (Kh. бүцалгах)
butarxay powder
buu gun
buudaka to fire, to shoot
buuj irxə to come down, to descend
buuka to dismount (from a horse)
butalgaj tabixa to put down ≠ buulgaχ tabyəxa
butalgaj tabyəxa to put down ≠ buulgaχ tabixa
buunea ama muzzle of a gun
buura camel stallion (Kh. буур; Bu. буура; WM буγура)
buurcaga bean
buurcaganee xalis bean pod
buuritay thorough, serious, considerable, courteously 2608
buuxa to stay at, to stop at
buylxa to bellow (Kh. буйлах; Bu. буйлаха; WM буйлаху)
büdürkə to stumble
büdüün thick, big
büdüün gədəs large intestine
bügdeek to bend (Kh. бөртүүх)
bügs all (Kh. бүүд; Bu. бүүдэ; WM бүүдэ) ≠ bügūd
bügsü buttocks (Kh. бүүс; Bu. бүүсэ; WM бүүсэ)
bügūd all (Kh. бүүд; Bu. бүүдэ; WM бүүдэ) ≠ bügs
bügüjiləkə to ring, to wear a ring, to put a ring on (Kh. бөлөх)
bügüləxə to block up (Kh. бөлөх)
büjig dance
büjigləkə to dance
bulüga group
bulyeen tepid, lukewarm
bümbəgü ball (Kh. бөмбөр; Bu. бүмбэр; WM бөмбөрэг)
bümbərcügü ball, sphere, globe (Kh. бөмбөрцэрг; Bu. бүмбэрсэрг; WM бөмбөрчэг)
bümbərkə to roll
būrəə bugle
bürgəd eagle
būridəxə to be made up of, to consist of, to comprise (Kh. бүрдəх; бүридэхэ; WM būridkü)
būrii very, extremely, much more (Kh. бүрий; Bu. бүри; WM büri)
būrin completely, fully (Kh. бүрэн; Bu. бүрин; WM būrin)
būrkəg üdür cloudy day
būrkəkə to overcast (weather)
būse daabuu clothe
būse sash, belt
būse təlee belting, sash, belt, girdle
bütlülgüydəxə to fail
bütlülgüydül failure (Kh. бүтэлгүйдэл)
büylə gum, teeth ridge
byalkam full (Kh. бялхам ‘almost overflow’)
byalkaxa to overflow (Kh. бялхаах/бялхуулах/бялхаах)

/c/
caa bugu reindeer ç buga
caaas paper
cabuu glue
cacaxa to scatter, to sprinkle, to spray ç cacuxu
cacura a large cloth tent usually rectangular in shape
cacuxu to scatter, to spray, to sprinkle ç cacaxa
cag¹ time
cag² watch, clock
cag aqaari weather
cagaan white
cagaan budaa rice
cagaan gaa ginger
cagaan kus birch tree
cagaan tugulga tin
cagdaa  police officer

cagdaagee  gajar  police station

cakilgaan  electricity

cakilgaan  lightening

cakilgaan  utasa  telegram, telegraph

cakuur  bat, beater  cokiuur

calin  pünlüü  pay, wages, salary

camca  shirt  samca

carca  locust

carialga  pretty, good looking (Kh. царайлаг)
caru  tray
carus  oak tree
cas  snow
cas oro x  to snow
casan  šüürg  snow storm
casaxa  to be full (of one's stomach) (Kh. цадах; Bu. садаха; WM  čadqu)
casnee nuraŋgi  snowslide, avalanche of snow
caxilgaan  cakilaka  to strike (lightning)
cay  tea
caybar  yagaan  light pink
caynee  ayaga  teacup, tea bowl

ceg  təmdag  punctuation mark  cəg  təmdag

cəbar  bolko  to become clean, to become clear
cəbəri  clean, pure
cəbərləkə  to clean
cəceriliq  garden
cəcəg  flower  cəcəg, cəcügə

cəcəg  abüčin  smallpox  übcin

cəcəgləx  to flower, to bloom, to blossom

cəcəgnee  bulcuu  bud, button (Kh. цэцгийн буцтуу)
cəcan  üg  aphorism, proverb, saying

cəcəraləqt  küreelən  garden, park
cəəji  breast, chest  cuujı

cəəli  pond
cəq təmdəg punctuation mark ֶ+cəq təmdəg
cəlməg üdür fine day
cəlmək to clear up (weather)
cəŋker sky-blue
cəргee kuranж quarters, barracks, military camp
cəрги military ֶ+ curg
cəri phlegm
cocəq flower ֶ+ cəqə, cocüə
cocüə flower ֶ+ cəqə, cocəq
cočixo to be surprised, to be startled
coglog delightful
coglog aylguu delightful melody
cokiuur bat, beater ֶ+ cakuur
cokixu to strike, to beat
colkoob money (< Ru. целко́вый) ‘a folk name for “ruble”, from the целковый рубль (“tselkovyi ruble”), i.e., a wholesome, uncut ruble’
coŋko window
cooji lock
coojiloko to lock
coolxo to pierce ֶ+ soolxo
corg soldier ֶ+ cərgi
cuglaаŋ meeting, assembly, demonstration
cuglaxa to assemble, to gather together
cugluulka to collect
culbəәra leading rein, tether (Kh. цулбуур)
curxay jagas pike (Esux lucius)
cusa blood
cuuiqi breast, chest ֶ+ cəqи
cuurga lock
cuurgal rumour, hearsay, gossip ֶ+ cuurxal
cuurgalaxa to lock
cuurxal rumour, hearsay, gossip ֶ+ cuurgal
cüсə gall bladder ֶ+ küsə
cümükə bag, briefcase, handbag (Kh. цүнх; Bu. сууымчэ, Ru.
Appendix 1: Vocabulary

сумка)
cüs ixtə  bold, brave
cüsə  gall bladder  cis  cüə
cüücə  chisel

/Č/

čadaxa  to be able to, can (In grammar study, our native speaker pronounced in this form)
čadaxagüy  not to be able to, can not
čalčaka  to chatter, to jabber
čaŋga  tense, taut  eń  činga
čaŋgalaka  to tighten
čarmayx  to strive, to do one's best
čelwa  stone  eń  čiluu
čenjüü  red pepper (< Chinese 秦椒[qínjiāu]) (Kh. čin'g'yǐ)
čənjüü  red pepper (< Chinese 秦椒[qínjiāu])
či  you (singular)
čiaatəra  theater (< Ru. tea’tp) (Our Khalkha team member's pronunciation was near to [tʰja:tʰ])
čicag aldaxu  to have diarrhea (Kh. чага алдах WM čičaγ-a aldaqu)
čiċirxa  to tremble, to quiver, to shake
čidala  ability, capacity
čidaxa  to be able to, to can
čidünjə  match (Kh. чу'дэнз; WM čüdengje)
čiğčee kuruu  little finger
čiğərəə  straight on, straight forward
čiigguy xürs  dried soil
čiiglągə  wet, damp, moist
čikə  ear  cis  čikü
čikəbč  ear cap
čikərląg  sweet
čiknee gədəəs  earlobe
čikü ear Čikə
čiluu stone Čelwə
čiluun straight
čimee anirgüy quiet, silent
čimee šuugaa noise, din
čimee šuugaantee noisy
čimegləl ornamentation, decoration
čimegləxə to decorate, to ornament, to adorn
čindaga hare
činara quality
činaxa to boil Šinaxa
čini your
čino wolf
čiŋa tense, taut Čanga
čirga sleigh
čirgdəl trouble, nuisance, inconvenience
čirlə corpse Šaril
čirxu to drag
čisü goyjiko to bleed
čitgər devil, ghost, spook, ogre Čitgür
čitgür devil, ghost, spook, ogre Čitgər
čukalčilan küskə to solicit
čukula important
čulbuurt jagas sheat fish, cat fish
čuluun straight
čumuul mosquito
čurkuy [tʰorkʰyː] socks (Kh. оймс Ru. носки, Ev. наски/сун’уки, Ma. fomoci) (It is not identified in Mongolian, Tungus, and Russian dictionaries.)
čülə desert
čüləəlkə to liberate, to free
Appendix 1: Vocabulary

/d/

daalgabar task, assignment
dabaa garigi [tawa: kariyi] Monday (< Ti. zla-ba + Sa. graha)
dabaj karayku to jump over
dabalqaa wave
dabas salt
dabas sulatee not salty enough
dabasaga (urinary) bladder
dabaxa to cross over
dabčuu narrow
dabkar floor, story
dabšixa to advance
dagabar bacagan step daughter
dagabar kübüün step son
dagaxa to follow, to accompany
daguulka to lead, to be accompanied by, to cause to follow
  *naguurka*
dagulj irk to bring (a person) along
dagulj yabaxa to take (a person) along
dağgyü All right!, No problem!
dajin war « dayn
dakeed again
dakin¹ 1. ~ times, -fold 2. double
dakin² again
dakyoo signal (Kh. дохию; Bu. дохёо; WM dokiy-a)
dal seventy
dalaj dam, embankment
dalay sea
dalayčin seaman
dalayn ārgi seaside
dalayn kaylaga beach
dam üg rumour, hearsay, gossip
damjuura ladder
daŋ modon güür single-log bridge
A Study of the Mongol Khamnigan Spoken in Northeastern Mongolia

daŋdaa always
daŋka teapot, kettle
daraa later, next
daraačiin sara next month
daraagay next, following
daraagay sara next month
daraluxu to oppress
daraxu to suppress, to press
dari (gun) powder
darinee sabu cartridge
dasuxu to get used to
dašimag # water-bottle, flask
dašimyogo water-bottle, flask
dayčiluxu to mobilize
daylaka to entertain, to treat
dayn war ※ dajin
dayrka to attack, to pass through
daysun enemy
dees up, upwards, above
des daraa [tis tara:] order (Kh. дэс дараа; Bu. (Cognate word unavailable); WM des daray-a)
dəbəəridix to winnow
dəbəsgər mat, mattress, cover
dəbkərəg grasshopper
dəbtər notebook (< Ti. deb-ther)
dəbũür fan
dəebri roof (Kh. дөңөр; WM degebüri)
dəed šüd upper tooth
dəed uruul upper lip
dəegũür xubtas upper garment
dəelsũũlκ to improve, to enhance, to raise
dəeri on, above
dəesee upwards, above
dəgdəəkəy chick
dəgəəyəx to hook
dəlbərχə to explode
dələgay to spread out
dələkee earth « dolokoy (Kh. дэлхий; Bu. дэлхэй; WM delekei)
dələŋ udder
dəlgəχ to undo, to break up
dəlʊi mane
dəlʊiʊi spleen
dəmjix to support
dəŋj chain (It is unidentified in Mongolian dictionaries.)
dəŋ lamp (< Ch. 燈[dēng])
dəŋ buudal inn
dəŋge toso lamp oil
dəŋlʊii lanter (< Ch. 燈籠[dēnglōng])
dəra pillow
dərgad by, near
dərsan dəbəsger straw mat
dibaaʃiŋ paradise
diildkə to lose, to be defeated
diiləkə to win, to defeat
dobtloko to attack, to rush forward
dogol corner
dogoloŋ kün lame person
dogşiṅ fierce, savage, ruthless, violent
dokixo to signal
dolaan burkan Ursa major
doldugaar sar July « doloodugaar sar
dolgūür shop, store
dolokoy world « dələkee (Kh. дэлхий; Bu. дэлхэй; WM delekei)
doloo seven
doloobor kuruu index finger, forefinger
doloodugaar sar July « dolugaar sar
dolooxo to lick
domči medical doctor
dood ʃidū lower tooth
dood uruul lower lip
door  below, under
dooš  down, downwards
doošee  downwards, below
doree  weak
dorilogo  [tɔriloŋko/τɔriloŋko]  purpose, goal (May be a simple pronunciation error of jorilogo)  Ꙣ jorilogo
dorno  east
doro  xayaxad  at least
dorod  inferior, lowly, humble
dorogo  badger
doromjiloko  to insult, to humiliate, to scorn
dotogšee  inwards
dootood  tala  inside, interior
dootoodo  internal, inner
dootooj  inner garment
dotorko  inside, interior
dotoro  in, inside
dotortee  kubtas  lined clothes
dotuur  kubcas  undergarments
dugaar  number
duguy  round, circle, bicycle, wheel
dulaakan  warmly, kindly
dulaan  warm
dulaanee  kəm  temperature
dulgiad  omog  Dulgiad clan (One of the Khamnigang clans). Appears also as [tɔliaːt ɔmɔk], [tɔlgjaːt ɔmɔk], [tolgjaːt ɔmɔk].
dund  nasnii  middle aged
dunda  in the middle of
dunda  kuruu  middle finger, long finger
dundada  middle, mid
duŋ  kisaa  sea shell, oyster
duragüy  kürük  to take a dislike to, to be fed up (with)
duragüycuk  to dislike
durarlaxa  to like, to be fond of, to love (May be a simple pronunciation error of duralaxa or durlaxa)
durtee liking, fond of
durtee bayku to like
duslaxa to drip, to dribble
dutagdaxa to be lacking, to be short of
dutuu bolgoson myaka undercooked meat
duu\(^1\) song \(\sim\) nduu
duu\(^2\) voice
duu abyee sound
duudaka to call
duugarxa to resound, to make a sound
duugay bayka to keep silent
duulaka\(^1\) to hear
duulaka\(^2\) to sing
duurayxa to copy, to imitate, to resemble
duusgaxa to finish, to end \(\sim\) duustaxa
duustaxa to finish, to end \(\sim\) duusgaxa
düči forty
düčidügəər fortieth
düčiəəd forty odd, forty or so
düliirək to become deaf
düliügəən gentle, quiet, peaceful
dülyee kün deaf person
dünčüür hundred millions
düŋnəxə to draw a conclusion
dürbüdügəər sar April
dürbülljin square (shape)
dürnünee nəgə a quarter, one fourth
dürəə stirrup
dürüb four
dürübdüdügəər fourth
dütı jam shortcut
düü\(^1\) younger brother
düü\(^2\) younger sibling
düürəka to be full \(\sim\) düürəxə
düürəŋ full
düürəxə to be full ər düürəkə
düürgəxə to fill

(/e/)

ekləad [ikʰlət] first, in the beginning (Pronunciation of the initial vowel is near to that of Khalkha эхлээд) (Kh. эхлээд; Bu. эхилээд; WM ekileged)

ekləxə [ikʰləxə/jukʰləxə] to begin, to start (Pronunciation of the initial vowel is near to that of Khalkha speakers’s эхлэх) (Kh. эхлэх; Bu. эхилэх; WM ekilekii) ər yükləxə
ekner нükür [əkʰner нukʰur/ekʰner нukʰur] wife and husband, spouse ər ěkner nükür

ektūn [ikʰu:n] puckery (taste), astringent (Pronunciation of the initial vowel is near to that of Khalkha эхүүн) (Kh. эхүүн; Bu. эхүүн 1); WM ekegün)

emčilək [emtçʰiləkʰ/emtiləkʰ] to treat, to doctor ər emtələk (Kh. емчлэх)

emtilək [emtçʰiləkʰ/emtiləkʰ] to treat, to doctor ər emčilək (Kh. емчлэх)

/ə/

əbderk [əbderk] to get broken, to be damaged (Kh. өвдэрх; Bu. өбдэрхэ; WM ebderekü)
əbdəkə to break, to destroy

əbgüürkək to be uncomfortable, not to feel well ər өбгүүрхəx
əbgüürxəx to be uncomfortable, not to feel well ər өбгүүркək
əbi нэгдэл solidarity, friendly relations (Kh. эв нэгдэл; Bu. эб нэгэдэл; WM eb nigedül)

1) эхүүн ‘едкий, кислый’ in Цыденжапов (1991: 138) seems to be an error for эхүүн.
əbšeeқ  to yawn əвəəχə
əbšeeχ  yawning əвəəχə
əbүге дээдэς ancestors (Kh. өвөг дээдэс; WM ebüge degedüs)
əбүр  horn (Kh. өвөр; Bu. эбэр; WM eber)
əбүсэқə  to be ill (Kh. өвдөх; Bu. үбдэхэ; WM ebedkü)
əсэəг  father (Kh. эцэг; Bu. эсэгэ; WM ečige) əсиг эх ба
küüküdüüд
əсэəстэə  finally
əсэəхə  to become weary
əсэəг эх ба küüküdüüд parents and children əсэйг, экə
əсэəг kübüün  father and son
əсигее нэг  father’s name
əдэе jасаг economy (Kh. эдийн засаг)
əдэгəк  to recover, to get better
əдэган  female shaman (Kh. удган Bu. удаган WM iduγan/iduγan)
  əдэгəк
əдирдəкαxa  to lead, to direct (Kh. удирдах; Bu. ударидаха; WM uduridqu)
əдирдəγəлγа leadership, guidance (Kh. удирдлaga; Bu. ударидалга;
  WM uduridulγ-a)
əднəра  these
əдəкəɬ[əтəə]  to sweep (It is not identified in Mongolian, Tungus,
  and Russian dictionaries.)
əэкə  fat (Kh. өөр; Bu. өөрэ; WM ögekü)
əэмəг  earring
əэɾəɾəңдүү to be changed, to become different
əэɾəə for oneself əэɾəɾөө
əэɾəм тал  open plain
əэɾүү  stammerer
əгочі  elder sister
əгочі дүү (elder and younger) sisters, elder sister and younger
  sister
əгүдəғə xутага  razor (/əгүдəғə/ in /əгүдəғə xутага/ is not
  identified in Mongolian, Tungus, and Russian dictionaries.)
əджагтэе  hostess, landlady
əjamšixə to possess
əjan owner, host
əjan kaan emperor
əjan kaanee katan empress
əka mother əcig ax ba küüküdüüd
əkənər wife, (a married) woman əxnər, əkner nükür, ekner nükür
əkənər abka to take a wife
əkner nükür spouse, wife and husband əkner nükür
ələqəbçí vest əlyəqəbçí
ələqəərəə kəbtəχə to lie on one’s face
ələgi liver (Kh. ələr Bu. əlые WM elige) əlíg
ələgsəg kind, kindly
ələgüy cradle, wrapping for a new-born child (Kh. əлагий; Bu. ылгы; WM ölüşэй)
ələnc ombea great-grandmother
ələnc übüg great-grandfather
ələsə sand (Kh. элс; Bu. эл₄э; WM elesэ) əlüş
ələsərxəg gajar sandy soil
ələsün čikər granulated sugar
əlíg liver (Kh. əлər Bu. əлье WM elige) əlэgi
əlэşi sand (Kh. элс; Bu. эл₄э; WM elesэ)
əlyəqəbçí vest əlyəqəbçí
əlyəqсыг friendly, intimate, amiable (Kh. əłэгсыг)
əlyərkiiłkə to express, to display (Kh. ылэрийилэх)
əlyərkiiılx to express, to display 2,061 (Kh. ылэрийилэх)
əm medicine
əm uuka to take medicine
əmbəea old woman (Kh. эмээ/эмгээ; WM emegen)
əmA koni ewe
əmA takee hen
əmA yamaa she-goat
əmAal saddle
əməg əka grandmother
əməgčin female animal
əməgən old woman (Kh. эмгээ Bu. эмгэн WM emegen)
əməkee ünərtək to stink, to have an offensive smell (Kh. өмхий үнэртэн)
əməriχ to tweak, to rub together (Kh. имрэх)
əmirixa to tweak, to rub together (Kh. имрэх)
əmügləə clay house (It sounds like a Mongolian word but not identified in dictionaries.) ümүглəə
əmügtəe woman, female
ən doloo konogt in this week
ən jüg this direction
ən jil this year
ən sara this month
ən and here
ən tənd here and there
ənə1 this (adjective)
ənə2 this one (demonstrative pronoun)
ənə3 this person (personal pronoun)
əŋɡəj to do this way (Kh. иңгэж)
əŋɡər flap of a Mongol gown, lapel
əŋɡü color (Kh. өнгө; Bu. үнгэ; WM öngge) üŋɡü
əŋnəxe to be lined up, to be in a row (Kh. өнхэх)
ərbaəxəe butterfly (Kh. өрвэхэй)
ərciiləxe to twist (Kh. өрчлэх)
ərdən şisi corn
ərdənəe үuluu gem, jewel
ərdənɨi jewel, gem, precious thing
əre təməa he-camel ərə mori, ərə yamaa
əre yamaa he-goat ərə yamaa
əra mori male horse ərɨ mori
əra yamaa he-goat ərə yamaa
ərə mədɨy future (Kh. ирээдүй; Bu. өрээдүй)
ərəgəcin male animal
ərəgtee man, male
ərəgəlizəxə to doubt ərəgəlişiməxə (Kh. өрээлзэх)
ərəgəlişiməxə to hesitate ərəgəlişiməxə (Kh. өрээлзэх)
ərəgəljaər doubtful
A Study of the Mongol Khamnigan Spoken in Northeastern Mongolia

ərgi bank, shore, coast (Kh. эрг; WM ergi)
ərgixa to turn, to go round, to rotate (Kh. əргжэх)
ərgüülki to turn, to turn round, to turn over үңгii ny ergüülkə
ərgüxə to raise
əri mori male horse аэрə mori
ərid нага cagt once upon a time (Kh. үрд нәг царт)
ərigən toyryən around, surrounding ərigin toyoryən (Kh. əргэх тойрон)
ərigin toyoryən around, surrounding ərigən toyryən (Kh. əргэң тойрон)
əriikə to search əryüki (Kh. əрэх)
ərkee kuruu thumb, pollex (Kh. əрхий хуруу)
ərko rights
ərta [ərtə] early
ərü jorigtee brave 638
ərüü chin
ərüül akuy hygiene
ərüül mənd health, healthy
ərüünee üjüür lower end of the chin
əryexa to invite (Kh. үрих; Bu. үриха; WM uriqu)
əryüki to search əriikə (Kh. əрэх)
əsərgüüсəк to protest əsəргüüсəх
əsərgüüсəх to oppose əsəргüüсəк
əsəryaɡə opposite, contrary (Kh. əспөг) əшal əсəриүү
əsgee qutal felt boots (Kh. əсгий гутал)
əsgəλəŋ amtutee sour (taste) аңгəлəŋ amtutuy
əsgəлəŋ amtutuy sour (taste) аңгəлəŋ amtutee
əsgirwaa whistle isgirə (Kh. ысгирээ WM iskirege)
ətuur [əтʰwɔr] broom (It is not identified in Mongolian, Tungus, and Russian dictionaries)
əxnər wife əкəнəр
/g/

gaalia tatabar customs duty
gabalee yasa skull, cranium bone
gadaa out, outside
gadaad ulas foreign country
gadagšee outwards
gadn outside
gadn tala the outside, exterior
gaduur out, outside
gajaas xün foreigner (Kh. гадаад хүн; Bu. гадаадын хүн; WM γadaγadu күмүн; Ka. нэзэдэй он-нүүгийн күн)
gajar gajar everywhere
gajar kūdūłūlt earthquake
gajar tarielan agriculture ⇆ gajur tarielan
gajarčin guide
gajaree ajan landlord
gajaree jurga map
gajaree samara peanut
gajaree toso mineral oil
gajur tarielan agriculture ⇆ gajur tarielan
gajura place ⇆ gajuru
gajuru earth, land, ground ⇆ gajura
gakay pig
gakayn myəka pork
gal fire
gal togoo kitchen (‘fire (and) cauldron’)
gal tūymar fire (as a disaster), conflagration
galbir türk shape, build, appearance
galee gərl fire light, light of a fire
galee nocoox to make a fire (-ee/ in /galee/ is inexplainable.)
galjuu kün crazy person
galjuurka to go crazy, to go mad (Kh. галзуурхах; Bu. галзуурх; WM γaljajuraqu)
galt tərəg train
galt ːtərgnee buudal  train station (Kh. ɡалт тэрэгнийй буудал)
galuu  goose
gamnuxu  to spare, to economize, to save on
ganc kuruunee bəalyee  mitten
gancaaduxu  to feel lonely, to be solitary (Kh. ганцдах)
gan  draught
gan kayluulxa  to melt steel, to make steel
gan tümər  steel
ganja  ravine, gorge
gar buu  handgun, pistol
gar kül  arms and legs, hands and feet
gar kürkə  to touch
garaka  to come out, to go out ːgaraxa, garuxu
garam  ford, river-crossing
garaxa  to happen, to take place ːgaraka, garuxu
garcu  exit (Kh. ɡарц; Bu. ɡарасa/ɡарца; WM ɣaruča)
garee  about, over
garee ar tala  back of one’s hand
garee kulmus  finger nail (Kh. хумс; Bu. хюмЬан) ːgaree kumus
garee kumus  finger nail ːgaree kulmus
garee üsiiq  signature
gargaj abaxa  to spin
garguxu  to take out
garigi  day of the week (< Sa. graha) (Kh. ɡариг; Bu. ɡараг; WM ɣaray)
garj irəx  to appear, to come out ːgarj irkü
garj irkü  to appear, to come out ːgarj irəx
garla  origin (Kh. ɡарал Bu. ɡарал)
garmagay  outstanding, superior, excellent
garu  hand (The final /-u/ is inexplainable.) ːgarwu
garuxu  to come out, to go out ːgaraxa, garaxa
garwə  arm (/-wə/ is inexplainable.) ːgaru
gašuubtar [kaçoıptar]  taste somewhat bitter
gašűün  bitter
gatalka  to cross (Kh. гатлах; Bu. гаталха; WM ɣatuqu)
Appendix 1: Vocabulary

**gay baricas** misfortune, bad luck (Kh. гай барчас; WM гай barčid)
**gegee** (day)light
**gegee oroxo** to dawn
**gədəs ülüşka** to be hungry (Kh. гэдэс өлсөх; Bu. гэдэхээ улдэхээ’ WM gedesü ölüşkü)
**gəəkə** to lose үгəəкə
**gəətəbee** bright
**gəjag** pigtail, queue
**gək mat** etc., and so on
**gələŋ** lama
**gəmgüy** innocent
**gəmt xərəgtən** criminal
**gəmtəx** to be damaged, to hurt
**gənət** suddenly
**gər bül** household өгəр бүлə
**gər bülə** family өгəр бүл
**gəree arda** at the back of the house
**gəree kajuud tarealjėee talbay** field attached to a homesite, kitchen garden
**gəree kulgan** house mouse
**gəree urda** front of the house
**gərəltəxə** to shine
**gərлə** light (radiance)
**giičin** guest үгiičin
**giiləxə** to drive (cattle) үгiiiləxə
**giijəgədxə** to tickle
**gilbar** easy, simple (Kh. хялбар; Bu. хилбар; WM kilbar) (Consultant might misheard our question, but it may be related to the Southern Khalkha phenomenon as some other words as /gokirlo/)
**gişgyəxə** to step, to tread
**gobi** Gobi, semi-desert
**gogod** Allium odorum, a kind of wild onion
**gokirlo** harm, damage, loss (Kh. хохирл; Bu. хохирол; WM qokirlo) өр kokiril baragduulka
**golee ærgəčig** river bend
golee ərigi  riverside

golee kündiin salki  river valley wind

golee toxoy  river bend

golo  river

gomdox  to complain

goŋginon uylaxa  to whine

goojixo  to drip, to leak

goridoxo  to expect, to hope

gorixo  stream  goryəxə

goryəxə  stream  gorixo

goxo  trigger

goyo  elegant, beautiful, smart

goyoko  to decorate, to ornament, to prettify

guay  Mr., Mrs. (addressing to the elders)

gučaad  thirty odd, thirty or so

guči  thirty

guči bacagan  great-great-granddaughter

guči xübüün  great-great-grandson

gučidugaar  thirtieth

gučin minuut  thirty minutes

gudus dotara  intestine (/gudus/ should be near to /gədəs/.)
gulda  vertical

gulsaatee  slippery

gundaxa  to get exhausted, to get run down

guniglaxa  to be sad, to be sorrowful

gurabdugaar sar  March

gurba  three

gurba gurbaar  three each

gurbadugaar  third

gurbaljin kəlibiri  triangular shape  gurbaljin kəlibər

gurbaljin kəlibər  triangular shape  gurbaljin kəlibiri

gurban juu  three hundreds

gurban jilee daraa  the year after next, three years hence

gurban kün  three people

gurban myəŋga  three thousands
gurban udāa three times
gurbanee nāga one third
gurgalday nightingale
gutal shoes
gutal əməsük to wear shoes, to put on shoes
guuras tube, pipe, duct
guya thigh
guyəka to request
guyrənči beggar
gūdās belly (Should be near to /gədəs/.) (Kh. гəдəс Bu. гəдəхə)
güjəəljəgən strawberry
güləgə puppy
gülümə leather, skin, cloth etc. which protects the horse from the stirrup, etc.
günjügii deep
günjī princess
gūrbəli lizard
gūrləxə to marry (Should be near to /gərləχə/)
güü mare
güünee ayryəg kumis
güünee süü mare’s milk
güürə bridge
güyetd kiix to complete  güytəj očoko
güyləs apricot
güytəj očoko to overtake, to catch up with  güyetd kiix
güyüş garku to run out (from inside to outside)
güyükə to run (Kh. гүүх Bu. гүүхə WM güyükü)
gyalaltaku to sparkle, to glitter, to gleam

/i/

ibyəəlāa kayrlaxa to bestow a favor (/-aa/ in /ibyəəlāa/ should be near to /əə/.)
ičika to be ashamed, to be embarrassed
idəbkətee active
idaa bəər pus, matter
idka to eat
idraxa to be tired, to be exhausted (Kh. ядрах; Bu. ядараха; WM yadaraqu)
idüülka to feed
iim bayna It is like this
iiməə like this
iišee to this way
ijii mother, mom (Kh. ижий/эжий; Bu. эжы; WM ejii)
ık bəyə body >> ik biiyə
ık biiyə body >> ik bəyə
ık buu cannon, artillery
ık tərbüm ten billions
ık tüləb mainly, mostly
ikir xüügūd twin child
il jakidal postcard (‘open letter’)
ilaa fly (Kh. ялаа; Bu. илааан; WM ilaγan)
ilbə magic, trick
ilči dulaan heat, warmth
ild sword, sabre
iləkə to caress, to stroke
ilğən čik a kind of wild plant or its fruit, which resembles a persimmon
iljigə donkey, ass
iltgəl report
ilüü surplus, spare, more (than), better (than)
ilüü muu worse
ilüü sayn better
ilüü ündür higher
ilüür iron, flatiron
ilüürgəx merit, good point, strong point (It looks like a verb)
indüü iron, flatiron (< Chinese 熨斗[yùndōü])
inəgən thin ≈ niməgən, nimgən, ningən
Appendix 1: Vocabulary

inyeekə to laugh
inyədtee amusing, funny, humurous
ŋə fully grown she-camel
ir blade, edge
irbəs snow-leopard
irgən toyron around, surroundings (Kh. эргэн тойрон)
irkə to come
irkə jila next year
irləkə to sharpen, to put an edge on
iruul bottom (Kh. ёруул; Bu. оо; WM iruγal/iruγar)
isgirəə whistle Შ asgirwaa
iṣigə kid
itgəχə to urge, to encourage (Kh. үтгэх; Bu. идхаха; WM idqaqu)
itgəχə to believe
ix abaga father’s elder brother
ix abaga bərigən father’s elder brother’s wife

/j/

jaabal certainly, compulsory
jaagči kuruu index finger, forefinger
jaaku¹ to show, to point to
jaaku² to teach
jaanee soyoo ivory
jaŋ elephant
jaaruka to sell
jaas coin (Kh. зоос)
jabə čüləə spare time, free time
jabə ügüy busy
jabi small boat
jadalxa to undo, to break up
jagalmee gills of a fish
jagas fish Შ jagus
jagasaal procession, parade
jagasčilaxa  fishing, to fish
jagasnee isə  fishbone <> yasu
jagasnee jibyər  fin
jagatnuχu  to itch
jaglamaytee mogoy  adder, viper
jagnuχu  to scold, to be cross at
jagsnee səraə  harpoon, fish spear
jagus  fish <> jagas
jagusčin  fisherman
jaka  market <> jaku
jakee  letter (mail) <> jakia
jakia  letter (mail) <> jakee
jaku  market <> jaka
jalbirku  to pray
jalguxu  to join, to connect
jalgyəxa  to swallow <> to gulp down (Kh. залгих)
jaligilaχa  to gulp down <> jalgyəxa (Kh. залгилах)
jaljin  sly, cunning
jalkuu  lazy
jalkuurka  to be slack, to be lazy, to be idle
jalkuxu  to get tired of, to have had enough of
jaluu  young, young man
jalyəxa  to swindle, to defraud
jam  way, road <> jamu
jamčiluxa  to show the way, to go as a guide
jam juura  on the way of, in the middle of
jamu  way, road <> jam
jan  character, nature, attitude
jaraa  hedgehog (Kh. зараа)
jarama  suslik, ground squirrel
jarca  servant
jarca bool  slave
jarca əmə  maid servant
jardul  costs, expense
jargaldaxu  to sue, to lay a complaint
jarlaga messenger
jasbarluxu to repair, to mend
jasxu to repair
jaxiryuxu to govern, to administer
jaxu edge
jay distance, gap
jayluxu to avoid, to flee, to move away
jee sister’s son
jee okin sister’s daughter
jaal market jööl
jaaldüülki to lend
jaelki to borrow
jaari gazelle, antelope
jaatüü hoe
jagays reed
jaraga grade, degree, rank
jargagcax to be lined up, to be in a row
jari jəbsag weapons
jərigiləə haze jərigiləə
jəryəg at the same time jəryəgə
jəryəgə at the same time jəryəg
jəsə copper
jobki eyelid
jogsool (bus) stop
jogsoxo to stand, to stop, to halt
jokicuulka to arrange
jolyoos victim
jorilogo purpose, goal (Kh. зорилго; Bu. зорилго; WM jorily-а)
dorilogo
joxicoldootee right, proper, suitable, fitting
joxisügüy not proper, not suitable
jöökə to transport, to carry
jööl market (Kh. зээл WM Jegeli) jəəl
jööləken soft
jööri property
jööritee rich, having property
jööritee kün rich person
jörigilәә haze әә jәrigilәә
jörüüdlxә to be obstinate, be awkward
jugtaxә to flee, to run away, to escape
jujaan thick
julbuulka to abort
juljaga young animal, new born animal
juljaqlaka to produce a young animal
juna summer
juragay aparaat camera
juraxә to picture
jurga picture
jurgaa six
jurgaaneel koyor two sixths
jurgudugaar sar June
jurma suslik, ground squirrel
jursil habit (Kh. зуршил)
jutaŋ šül gruel
juu hundred
juun dünčüür ten billions
juun myәŋɡa hundred thousands
juun sayi hundred million
juuxә to bite, to have between the teeth
jüb right, correct, Right!
jüb todoroxoy correct, precise
jübkәn only
jüblәxә to go towards, to head for
jübšәәrkә to approve, to agree
jüdumpkә to wear oneself out, to get exhausted
jüg čig direction
jüɡә towards
jügi bee
jügiin bala honey
jüŋna [tsuŋna] pan (It is not identified in Mongolian, Tungus,
and Russian dictionaries)

jürk heart
jürk şadikəl heart, affections, heart and mind \( \Leftrightarrow \) jürk şatgil
jürk şätgil heart, affections, heart and mind \( \Leftrightarrow \) jürk şadikəl
jütgəxə to struggle, to strive, to exert oneself
jüü needle
jüüda dream
jüüdəlk to dream
jüün left
jüün taldə the left
jüün talu left side (Should be near to /jüün tal/ or /jüün tala/.)
jüün tul east
jüün tuušee to the left, leftwards (Should be near to /jüün tiišee/.)
jüündə utas sübülükə to thread a needle
jüylə kind, sort
jüyr üg (old) saying

/ʃ/

jaraaxayn dəgəə fish hook \( \Leftrightarrow \) jiraaxay
jaraaxayn sərəə harpoon, fish spear \( \Leftrightarrow \) jiraaxay
jaraaxayn uurga fishing rod \( \Leftrightarrow \) jiraaxay
jaraaxayn uurganee utas fish line \( \Leftrightarrow \) jiraaxay
jabərika to rust, to be infected with rust (Kh. зэврэх)
jaerlige nugas mallard
jibkə to sink
jibšuurku to approve, to agree to
jiči bacəgən great-granddaughter
jiči kübüün great-grandson
jida spear
jignuur balance, scale \( \Leftrightarrow \) jignuur
jigšixa to be disgusted at, to loathe, to hate
jigšürtee ugly
jigteexən strange, odd, curious
A Study of the Mongol Khamnigan Spoken in Northeastern Mongolia

jigüür wing
jijiluurtee tough (meat) (Kh. зажлууртai; WM jajiluurtai)
jijilxa to chew (Kh. зажлах; WM jajilqu)
jil bure every year
jimis fruit
jimisgən berry
jimisləxə to fruit
jınəməg biscuit
jınəxə¹ [ʨiŋnəxə] to steam
jınəxə² [ʨiŋnəxə] to weigh
jınnuur balance, scale ęp jignuur
jira sixty
jiraaaxay fish ęp jaraaxayn dəgəə etc.
jiran kült centipede
jirbügər moustache (Kh. живэр)
jirqaα six
jiriin ordinary, simple
jirmisləltə pregnancy, conception ęp jirümüsləkə
jirümüsləkə to get pregnant ęp jirmisləltə
jišee example
jišeelbəl for example
jorloŋ toilet
juuka oven, stove
jüčə stable
jüjiga play, drama, show

/k/

kaagdaxu to shut, to be shut, to be closed
kaaku to close
kaalugu gate
kaan where
kaašaa to where
kaayaa from time to time
kabar  spring (season)
kabčal  (vertical) cliff
kabči  crayfish
kabčuulka  to duck in, to duck between
kabdara  swelling, tumour, contusion
kabdaxa  to swell
kabirgan sara  crescent moon, new moon xabyərgan sara
kabku  trap
kabtaga  small pouch
kabyərəg  rib
kacaree yas  zygomatic bone, cheek bone kacura
kacura  cheek kacaree yas
kačin soniŋ  strange, odd
kačir  garnish or addition to a dish
kadaas  nail
kadaχa  to nail
kadaglaχa  to keep, to store, to conserve, to preserve
kadagtay  Mrs, Madame, lady
kadam aba  father-in-law
kadam axa düü  brothers in-law
kadam ejii  mother-in-law kadam ijii
kadam oğəči düü  sisters-in-law
kadam ijii  mother-in-law kadam ejii
kadamd očək  to take a husband
kadasan öbc  hay, dried grass xadasan öbs
kaduxa  to mow, to reap xaduxu, kadasan öbc etc.
kagacaka  to leave, to get free of
kagalaagdaxa  to split (passive)
kagalaxa  to slit, to split (active)
kajayxa  to be tilted, to be crooked
kajuura  sickle
kajuxa  to bite  xajuxa
kajuud  side
kalbaga  spoon
kaldaxa  to infect
kalim  whale
kalimag kün  a Kalmuck  kalimyəg kün
kalimyəg kün  a Kalmuck  kalimag kün
kalın nisəxü  to soar and turn round and round  kalın nisxə, nisko
kalın nisxə  to soar and turn round and round  kalın nisəxü, nisko
kalisluku  to peel  xalisulku
kaljan tologoy  baldhead  tologoy, tolgayn əbčin, etc.
kalka  cow shed, cattle pen
kalkaluxu  to cover, to shield, to screen
kaltırəgaatee  slippery (Kh. халитьиргаатай)
kaluu  hot (taste)
kaluun  temperature, heat, hot and sultry
kaluun arashaan  hot spa
kaluun kanj  heatable sleeping platform in a room, under floor heating
kaluun us  hot water
kalyaar  Allium victorialis, a kind of wild garlic
kalyuu  otter
kalyuun bugu  red deer, Cervus elaphus
kamaagüy  doesn’t matter, irrelevant, nothing to do with
kamaarka  to depend on  xamaarka
kamaatan  relatives
kamagay muu  the worst
kamagay sayn  the best
kamagay ündür  the highest
kamaree nük  nostrils  xamaree nük, kamaru, etc.
kamaru  nose  kamaree nük, etc.
kamgaalka  to defend, to protect
kamkarxa  to get broken, to be damaged (Kh. хамхрах)
kammigan kün  a Khamnigan
kampaan  company  (Ru. компа’ния) (Kh. компани)
kamta  together
kamtar an ajillax  to cooperate, to work together
kamuu  mange, scabies
kamuut  yoke (for a horse and its cart) (< Ru. хомъч) komuut
kan kübüün  prince
kana  section of a Mongolian tent-wall, wall
kancuy  sleeves
kandaka  to treat
kandalaga  attitude, tendency
kandgay  elk
kanyeed  cough, cough, cold
kanyeed kürkə  to catch cold
kanyeelgaxa  to cough
kaŋgalttay  sufficient, satisfactory
kar kükü  indigo, dark deep blue xar kükü, kara kəree, karu, etc.
kara kəree  raven
kara xusa  black birch
karaačay  swallow
karaakan  (not) yet karaakan
karaakun  (not) yet karaakan
karaaxa  to curse, to swear
karacug  hawk (Kh. харцага)
karacuga  hawk (Kh. харцага)
karaŋglaţuxu  to supervise, to look after xaraŋglaţaxa
karamasultay  regrettable, deplorable
karamči  stingy, misery xaramči
karamsuxa  to be sorry, to have regrets
karandaas  pencil (< Ru. карандаш) (Kh. харанда; Bu. карандаш)
karaŋgu  gong
karaŋkuy  dark
karaxu  to look, to see
kardaxa  to be suspicious
karee bürii  dusk
karee bürii bolko  to grow dark xarii bürii bolxo
kargis  cruel, brutal, fierce
A Study of the Mongol Khamnigan Spoken in Northeastern Mongolia

{karguy} street
{karicaa} relations, relationship
{karicuulka} to compare
{karigixan} shallow (water) = xarigixan
{karilcaaa} relations, relationship
{kariu} answer, response, reply
{kariucaxa} to take responsibility
{kariučlaga} responsibility
{kariuucăj abka} to take responsibility for
{kariuulka} to answer
{kariuulka} to repay, to requite = xariuulka
{karmaa} pocket (< Ru. карма'н)
{karu} black = xar kükü, kara käre, karu, etc.
{karuu} frost (Kh. хярyy; Bu. хюрyy; WM kiraγu)
{karuul} plane (carpenter’s tool)
{karuul manaa} guard, sentry
{karuulka} to show (the existence)
{karyaalagdaxa} to be subordinate to, to be within the preview of, to come under the jurisdiction of = xaryaalagdaxa
{kasag} Kazakh = xasag
{kasag kün} a Kazakh
{kaší čuluu} jade = xaší šeluu
{kašílag} fence = xašílag
{kataaxa} to dry up
{katan} her majesty, empress, queen
{katgamal} embroidery
{katguχu} to stab, to pierce, to stick in, to sting, to insert
{katuu} hard
{katuu čiŋga} strict, severe, harsh
{katuxu} to dry up = xatuxu
{kayaal ægæči düü} female second cousins
{kayaga} address
{kayaxu} to throw, to drop
{kayč} scissors
{kayčlaxa} to cut with scissors
kayku to search
kaylaka to melt
kaymar india-rubber, rubber
kayr love
kayragera čiluu gravel, grit
kayragera čuluu gravel, grit
kayras scale (fish)
kayrčag box, chest
kayrka to roast, to fry
kayrłaka to love
kayruulka tabaga frying-pan
kebyan korkoy moth (Kh. хивээн эрвээхэй; WM kibyeng erbekei)
koédəkə to lie down
koqtəj bayxa to lie, to lie down
koçüü difficult
kočineen how much
koʊddüŋəer which one in a series?
kədən how many
kədən nasutee how old
kədiin already (Kh. хэдийнэ)
kədyee cag what time
koəlbiix to lean, to deviate, to tilt, to decline
koəly abka to be impregnated, to conceive
koər tal steppe, grassland
koərkən cute, pretty üköörikən
koərkii poor, pitiable
koərkiilikə to be sorry for, to feel for
koərülüüsen süü simmered milk (Kh. хөөрүүлсэн сүү)
kəjəə when
kəlbir shape, form (Kh. хэлбэр; Bu. хэлбэри; WM kelberi) kəlbiri
kəlbiri shape, form (Kh. хэлбэр; Bu. хэлбэри; WM kelberi) kəlbir
kəldge jagas crucian carp
kəlo1 tongue
kəlo2 language
kələgüy kün dümb person
kələkə to say, to speak
kələlcəər negotiation ☞ xələlcəər
kələlcəəx to discuss, to converse ☞ xələlcəəx
kəlmərčiləx to interpret, to act as an interpreter ☞ kərmərčiləx (Kh. xəлмэрчлэх)
kəmjixə to measure
kəmilee lower lip (Kh. хөмхий; WM kömükei)
kən who
kən nəg kün someone, somebody
kən nəg ny someone, one of them
kənee whose
kərčixə to cut, to slice (thin) ☞ kərčixə
kərčixə to cut, to slice (thin) ☞ kərčixə
kərəg business, matter
kərəgteee to be needed, necessary
kərəm¹ castle
kərəm² squirrel
kərgij kün a Kirgiz
kərgləkə to use
kərmərčiləx to interpret, to act as an interpreter ☞ kərmərčiləx (Kh. хəлмэрчлэх)
kərüüļ təmcəl quarrel, dispute
kəsəg¹ part
kəsəg² lump
kəwəər as before, unchanged
kibyəkə to ruminate
kičeeŋgүyən kündüllə to respect, to treat with respect
kiikə¹ to do, to make
kiikə² to put thing in, to dish up, to fill
kiilgləkə to let someone to do something (Kh. хийлгэх Bu. WM kilgekü)
kil kajagaar border, frontier, boundary
kimda cheap (Kh. хямд Bu. хямда WM kimda) ☞ kyamdə
kimdaxan ünə cheap price
kinoo movie (< Ru. кино')
Appendix 1: Vocabulary

kir dirt
kir burtag dirt
kirgaka to shear (a sheep)
kristoosee sum church
kleem bread (Bu. хилээмэ) klyeem
klyeem bread (Bu. хилээмэ) kleem
kobor rare, rarely
kocoroko to be left behind
kodood stomach
kojimdoko to be late
kokiril baraγduulka to compensate for gokirlo
kolboxo to connect, to join, to unite
kolgboxo to rub, to chafe
kolildoxo to mingle with, to be mixed with
kolo far
koltos bark of a tree
kolyəxo to mix xolyəxo
komool horse dung
komuut yoke (for a horse and its cart) (< Ru. хому’т) (Kh. буулга)
\(\Rightarrow\) kamuut
koni sheep
konin togoγ large cauldron
koninee noos wool
koninee süü sheep milk
konjuu gain, profit xonjuu
konko bell
konog a day and a night, 24 hours
kool meal xool etc.
kool kūnės food, provision, eatables
kooloy throat
koorond between
kooslko to empty out xooslxо
kooson empty
kor poison
korgol droppings of camel, sheep, or goat
kori twenty
koriaad twenty odd, twenty or so
koridugaar twentieth ᴵˢʰ xoridugaar
korin nəgə twenty one
korkay worm, insect
korogodoxo to be reduced, to be cut down
korom minute, moment, second, in a moment
koso pair
kosroxo to become empty
koto koree pen, fold
koyd north
koyn north
koyor two
koyor juu two hundreds ᴵเชี่ยวชาญ xoyor juu
koyor koyoroor two each
koyor kün two people ᴵ xoyor kün
koyor myəŋga two thousands
koyor tala two sides
koyordugaar second
koyortaa two times, twice
koyšiluulka to postpone
koyt back
koyt əcəg step father
koyt əkə step mother
koyuulaa two of us together ᴵᵏ xoyuulaa
köö tortog soot
köökə to pursue, to chase away
köös foam, scum
kubaaʃ ügük to distribute, to divide up, to share out
kubaax to divide
kubcas clothes
kubi share, portion, allotment
kubi jayaa fate, fortune
kubiarilaxa to distribute, to divide up, to share out
kubisgal revolution
Appendix 1: Vocabulary

kubtasnee jaxa  collar
kubyee oncolog  individual character
kuca  ram
kučixa  to cover, to cover up  xučixa
kučütee  strong  xučütee
kudla  false
kugacaa  period, time, term  xugacaa
kugas  half (Kh. xarac; Bu. xaxad; WM qa’as)
kugaslaka  to halve (Kh. xarac; Bu. xaxad; WM qa’as)
kulanc əmbəə  great-great-grandmother
kulanc Kügšee  great-great-grandfather  xulanc xügšee
kulčigar  timid, fearful
kulgana  mouse, rat
kulgayčin  thief  kulugaač, kulugayč
kulugaač  pilferer, petty thief  kulgayčin, kulugayč
kulugayč  pilferer, petty thief  kulgayčin, kulugaač
kulus mod  bamboo
kuluu  pumpkin
kuluuka  to steal
kumaka  malaria
kumas  nail (finger, toe)
kun  swan
kundaga  goblet, glass, cup
kur  šibuu  black grouse
kuraga  lamb
kuralaa neek  to open the conference, meeting
kurca  sharp, keen
kurda  speed
kurdan  fast, quickly
kurgirax  to snore
kuruu  finger
kus modnee məəg  birch tree mushroom
kusaka  to shave
kuš mod  cedar
kutag  well (for water)
kutga knife
kuučin old, worn
kuugalaxa to break, to fracture (transitive)
k uuja side whiskers, sideburns
kuulye law
kuuray dry ꞌ xuuray, kuuree
kuuree ꞌ dry ꞌ xuuree, kuuray
kuuree ꞌ ꞌ rasp
kuuree axa elder sister’s husband. Original meaning of /kuuree/
is ‘dry’ as /kuuray/ or /xuuray/. Khalkha xyyrap ‘dry’) is used
as an attribute to denote someone who is regarded as one’s own
family member but who is not related in blood or marriage
very similarly to the Chinese word 幹 [gān] ‘dry’. An Alar Buriat
consultant of 1997 fieldwork study, Mrs. Eleonora Vladimirovna
Tumurova (41 years old) used the word xuuree axa for ‘husband’.

� xuuree ax
kuuree gajar land
kuuree uliral dry season
kuurka to roast
kuursan tutarga parched rice
kuurtaxa to be deceived
kuyu salki whirlwind
kübči bowstring
kübüd moss
kübün cotton
kübün alčuur towel
kübün daabuu cotton
kübün polaas towel (< Ru. поло’тенце?)
kübüx to float
küči power ꞌ xüči
küčin jüil force, factor
küčinee kəmjəə degree of strength, intensity
küdaləməryəka to labour, to work, to toil
küdar musk deer
küdüla x to move, to shake, to sway, to rock, to leave
küdülğəxə  to stir, to excite, to (make something) move
küdülmərčin  laborer, worker
küdülxə  to move
küğčə  mold
küğjİltee  cheerful, merry, lively
küğjim  1. music 2. musical instrument
küğjİx  to develop, to flourish
küğşin  old, aged
küğşin kün  old person ⇔ xügşin kün
küjüü  neck
küjüünee jüült  necklace
küka¹  blue
küka²  breast
kükə  cuckoo
kükükə  to suck milk
kül  foot, leg
külnücgən  barefoot
küldəkə  to freeze
külee əryəən bulčin  calf of the leg
külee kumas  toe nail
külee kuruu  toe
külee şagay  ankle
küliyəkə  to wait
küliyən abka  to receive, to accept
külus¹  pay, wages, salary
külus²  sweat
külus ərka  to sweat
külyee ul  sole of the foot
küməəl  Mongol onion, Allium mongolicum
kümüsə  eyebrow
kümüüs  people
kün  person, people, human being
künd  heavy
kündee jîn  weight
kündətgəxə  to respect, to treat with respect
A Study of the Mongol Khamnigan Spoken in Northeastern Mongolia

kündülen horizontal
kündülənee orolcoo interference, meddling
künəsə food, provision
künnix concave, dent, hollowed
künsnee nogoo vegetables
küngün light (in weight)
küngünd üjəx to despise
kür korkayn üür cocoon
kürbüülkə to translate, to interpret
küree range, scope, extent
küreelkə to surround, to make a circle, to envelop, to surround, to besiege
kürə korkoy silkworm
kürəə saw (tool)
kürgəxa to freeze
kürigen küü son-in-law
kürigin bridegroom
kürilə bronze
kürkə¹ to arrive, to reach
kürkə² to get cold, to cool down
kürkree waterfall
kürma (short outer) jacket
kürši neighbor
kürülɔətee sufficient
kürügen brown
küskə to want, to wish
küšikələkə to slice, to cut thin
küttülkə to lead, to drive
küü boy, son
küüg child
küükəd child
küükəldee doll
küükən kəl uvula
küys navel
küytən chilly, cold
Appendix 1: Vocabulary

**kwaanlye** calendar (< Ch. 還曆 [huánli])

**kyamda** cheap (Kh. хямд; Bu. хямда; WM kimda) ≡ kimda

**kyen̤gan kutaga** kitchen knife

\(/l/\)

**l̃aa** candle (< Ch. 蠟 [là])

**l̃aa̅ja** can, din, bin (< Ch. 擂子 [lázǐ])

**l̃ag šabar** mud, mire

**limba** flute (< Ti. gling-bu)

**lonko** bottle

**luu** dragon (< Ch. 龍 [lónɡ])

**lu̅usa** mule (< Ch. (< Ancient Chinese 驴子. Its modern standard pronunciation is [luó zi]. This word seems to have been borrowed indirectly through Middle Mongolian or other sources)

\(/l̃/\)

**l̃agb̃a garig̃i** Wednesday (< Ti. lhag-pa + Sa. graha)

\(/m/\)

**maajixu** to scratch, to scratch at

-**maaar bayna** to feel like doing, to want

**magasg̃ūy** perhaps, possibly, maybe (Kh. магадгүй; Bu. магадгүй; WM магадугей)

**magnee** forehead

**magtdoxo** to praise

**majaalee** (Gobi) bear (Ursus pruinosus) (Kh. мазаалай)

**maka** meat, flesh

**mala** domestic animal

**malagay** hat
malagay əməsüka to wear a hat, to put on a hat
malči herdsman
malee təjeel forage, fodder
manaači guard, sentry, watch
mananə mist, fog
mananə nüügülđəka to be foggy, to be mist
mananə tataka to be foggy, to be mist
manay our
manay tala our side
manji Manchu
manu agate (< Ancient Ch. 玛瑙, maybe borrowed to Middle Mongolian through other source such as Old Uighur)
manuul manul, wild cat
manuus we (hearer inclusive)
margaaši tomorrow
martaxa to forget
maši very
maši baga few, very few, very small
maši bićeexən very small
maši olon a lot, very many
maši tomo very big
mašiin car (< Ru. машина) (Kh. машин)
mašiinee təəxnik [maçiine: tʰəxnik] machine, vehicle (< Ru. машина, техника) (Kh. машин техник)
maykan tent
maylxa to bleat
mədəə news
mədakəgüy not to know, do not know
mədərkə to feel
mədəxə to know
mədrəəl nerve, nerves
məkləxə to cheat, to deceive məxələxə
cələn colkoob cash ələn colkoob
məndčiləx to greet
məŋ tolobo mole, birthmark, spot
mərəč idək to gnaw, to nibble
mərəkə to gnaw, to nibble
mərgə tülüg fortune telling, divination
mərgəjil profession, job
maxləxə to swindle, to defraud ≠ məkləxə
miitərə metre (< Ru. метр) (Kh. метр)
minjə beaver
minyee my
miŋmara qarıgi [miŋmärä kariyi] Tuesday (< Ti. mig-dmar + 
    Sa. ) (Kh. мягмар гариг; WM miγmar)
mišuuk to smile (Kh. мишээх; WM misiyekü/misigekü)
mitraal material (Kh. материал; Bu. материал; WM materiyal)
modo tree, wood
modočin woodcutter
modon sam wooden comb
modonee iš trunk of a tree
modonee müčir branch of a tree
modonee nüürs charcoal
mokoo dull, blunt
mongol Mongol
mongol gər Mongolian felt tent
mongol kün a Mongol
mori horse
mori unaad yabaku to go on horseback
morinee tərəg horse-cart
möög mushroom (Kh. мөөг; Bu. мөөгэ; WM mögü/mögüü)
möörökə to moo, to low (for cattle)
mujaŋ carpenter
mukur nük pit
mukur ologoy appendix
mukuu female genitalia (in children’s speech)
muluguu stupid
muna mallet
muŋkag fool, stupid
murii juraas curved line, curve (Kh. муруй зураас WM murui
A Study of the Mongol Khamnigan Spoken in Northeastern Mongolia

‘curved’)

murtarlaxa to sign
muu bad, evil
muura cat
müdüülək to report, to inform (Kh. мэдээлэх)
mülgər smooth (Kh. мөлгөр)
müljixə to exploit (Kh. мөлжих)
mülkəa vine (Kh. мөлхөө)
mülkəkə to crawl, to creep (Kh. мөлхөх)
mündur hail (Kh. мөндөр)
münaa the present
münaa oroy this evening
münaa sün tonight = münaa šün
münaa šün tonight = münaa sün
münaa ügüləa this morning
münuudur today
münuunuus from now on
müŋga¹ silver
müŋga² münɡü (monetary unit, one hundredth part of a tügrüg)
müngü money
müŋgünee küü interest (money) = müŋgünee xüü
müŋgünee xüü interest (money) = müŋgünee küü
mürdəkə to follow, to go after, to pursue, to track
müra shoulder
müraa kabčixa to shrug the shoulders
mürgüladəkə to collide, to butt each other
müriitee togloom gambling
mürnee polaas shawl
mürünə big river
müsa ice
müšgik to pursue, to chase, to trace, to track
myaka tataχa to mince meat
myəŋgu [mjəŋɡə] thousand (Kh. мяŋγə Bu. мяŋγə WM mingγ-a)
myəka meat
/n/

naadam  toy
naadum  game, play
naaduxa  to play
naasaj kələkə  to joke
naasxa  to play
naaxu  to stick
nabči  leaf
nagac bərigin  wife of mother’s brother
nagac əcəq  mother’s father ə naguc əcəq
nagac əkə  mother’s mother
nagac xürgən  axa  husband of mother’s sister
nagsa  mother’s brother (Bu. нарса ‘mother’s father’)
nagsaxay  mother’s sister (Bu. нарса абрай ‘mother’s sister’;
нагасхай/нарса ахай ‘mother’s brother’)
naguc əcəq  maternal grandfather ə nagac əcəq
naguurka  to lead, to be accompanied by, to cause to follow (May
be a simple pronunciation error of daguullka)

nakyaα  bud
naluxu  to lean against
nambalag  dignified, grave
namakan nyūrugutee  short (stature) (Kh. намхан нуруутай Bu.

nymгатай WM namqan niruγutai)
namakun  low
namaxan nyūrugutee  short (stature)
namgarkag  gajar  swamp, marsh, bog
namtura  biography, life-story
namuru  autumn (Kh. намар; Bu. намар; WM namur)
nančildaxa  to fight, to brawl
nandignuku  to treasure, to revere, to treat with reverence, to
cherish
nar oroxo  to set (sun)
nar urgaxa  to rise (sun)
nara jirgaxa  sunset
nara mandaxa  sunrise
nara urgaxa  sunrise
narand øak  to bask in the sun
nariin  thin, fine
nariin gədas  small intestine
nariyeekan  thin, fine, narrow (Kh. нарийнхан)

nariyeekan šudtee samu  fine-toothed comb (Kh. нарийнхан шүдтэй сам)
naru  sun
narus  pine tree
nasand kürsən kün  adult
nasu  age
naya  eighty
nayma  eight
naymaa  barter, trade
naymaacin  merchant
naymaalj  crab
naymaalj abka  to buy
naymdugaar sar  August
nayr  feast, banquet  найръя (Kh. найр Bu. найр WM найр)
nayryə  feast, banquet  найръя (Kh. найр Bu. найр WM найр)
naytaak  to sneeze  найтаах (Kh. найтаах)
naytooxo  sneeze  найтаах (Kh. найтаах)
nduu [ndwə/toː]  song (It maybe a simple error of /duu/.)
neekə  to open
nəbtərχə  to penetrate, to pass, to cross
nəbtļəx  to penetrate
nəbtrüüləg  broadcast
nəɡə  one
nəɡə caga  one hour
nəɡə kün  one person
nəɡə minuut  one minute
nəɡə nəɡəər  one each
nəɡə şün  one night
nəɡə tal  one side
nǝǥǝ udǝa  one time, once
nǝǥǝdüǥǝər  first  nǝǥǝsügüər  sar
nǝğǝsügüər  sar  January  nǝǥǝdügüər
nǝğjix  to search for
nǝkǝx  to weave, to knit
nǝli  yagaan  violet
nǝmǝgδaxǝ  to increase, to grow
nǝmǝka  to add
nǝmǝxa  to add
nǝr  tǝrtǝee  honorable
nǝrǝ  name
nǝrgüy  kuruu  ring finger
nigta  dense  nyegta
niigǝm  society
niigǝmee  garal  social status
niik  to blow the nose
ni islǝl  city
ni islǝl  kot  capital city
niitǝ  all, total, public, general, gross
nilǝd  considerably, remarkably
nimǝgǝn  thin  inǝgǝn, nimǝn, ningǝn
nimǝn  thin  inǝgǝn, nimǝn, ningǝn
ningǝn  thin  inǝgǝn, nimǝn, nimǝn
ningyǝn  künjil  blanket, bed clothes
nisa  snivel (Kh. hyc; Bu. hıoha; WM nisu)  nyüsǝ
niskǝ  to fly
niskǝ  ongoc  airplane
nodniŋ  last year  nodnyon
nodnyon  last year  nodniŋ
nogoon  green (color)
nogoon  mǝlkee  green frog
nogoy  snake (Simple pronunciation error of mogoy)
nogt  halter
nokoy  dog
nokoy  böös  flea
nomo  book
noyiloxo  to dominate, to rule
noyin  Mr., gentleman ᴩ noyon
noyin nuruu  ridge-pole
noyiton  wet, damp
noyin  Mr., gentleman ᴩ noyon
noyr  kürkü  to feel sleepy ᴩ noyr xürkü
noyr  xürkü  to feel sleepy ᴩ noyr kürkü
noyro  sleep ᴩ noyro
noyro  sleep ᴩ noyro
nökcöl  condition
nööcləx  to lay in, to reserve ᴩ nööcülək
nööcülək  to reserve ᴩ nööcləx
nudarga  fist
nugas¹  duck
nugas²  spinal cord
nugasa  spinal cord
nuglaxa  to fold
nulimas  tear (Kh. нулимс/нумис; Bu. нёлбоон; WM nilbusu)
nulmak  to spit (Kh. нулимах)
num xarbaka  archery ᴩ num xarbaxa
num xarbaxa  archery ᴩ num xarbaka
numa  bow
numü sumü karbaka  shoot an arrow
nuntaga  powder
nuntagalx  to pulverize, to reduce to powder ᴩ nuntaglaxa
nuntaglaxa  to pulverize, to reduce to powder ᴩ nuntagalx
nuraga  waist, small of the back (Kh. нуруу; Bu. нюрга; WM ниругу)
nuraxa  to collapse
nurma  ash
nurtee  [nɔrtʰɛː]  famous, well-known (Should be near to /nərtee/)
nuruu  back (spine)
nuryə  personal name (Should be near to /nər/. /-yə/ is not explainable.)
nuuca  secret
nuucaar nəbtərkə to infiltrate
nuugdaka to be hidden, to hide
nuuka to hide, to conceal
nuur lake nuura
nuura lake nuur
nücgən naked, bare
nüd gyelbaxa dazzled (Kh. нүд гялбах; WM gilbaqu)
nüdə eye
nüdəx to pound
nüdnee šil eyeglasses
nüdnee šil jüük to wear glasses, to put on glasses
nüdünee cəcəgee eyeball
nügə tala opposite side
nügəðəree margaaši three days hence, two days after tomorrow
nügəəsər day after tomorrow
nükəŋ joori lair, cellar
nükər¹ husband
nükər² comrade
nükük to patch, to mend
nüləə influence
nümürkə to drape over the shoulders
nüra personal name nuryə (Should be near to /nər/.)
nüraə back (spine) nuruu
nüükə to move, to shift pastures, to migrate
nüülgəkə to move, to shift
nüür ugaaka saba washbasin
nüürə face
nüürəsə coal
nyareea kūük infant (Kh. нярай хүүхэд)
nyeegdəkə to open (up)/to be opened
nyegta dense nigta
nyeləxə to spread on, to apply
nyima garigi Sunday (< Ti. nyi-ma + Sa. graha)
nyūsa snivel (Kh. нус; Bu. нюха; WM nisu) nisə
A Study of the Mongol Khamnigan Spoken in Northeastern Mongolia

/о/

oboceer officer (< Ru. офице́р) (Kh. офицер [aftse:r]; Bu. офицер; WM опицер) oй abaceer
obog family name, father’s name
oboolko [ɔwɔːlkɔ] to heap up, to pile up
oboorko to pile up, to gather together
obooyoos oat
očiko to go očko
očoko to go očko
odo star
odoor boltol up to now
odoxo to lie in wait
ogcom steep, abrupt, sharp
ogtoloso¹ to cut, to cut off, to cut down
ogtoloso² to go across, to traverse
okin girl, daughter, maiden, maid
olj neeka to find
olomo saddle-girth, cinch
olon many
olon kün crowd, many people
olonee guuglaan shouting, shout, outcry
olonee kašigiraan shouting, shout, outcry
oloso¹ hemp (Kh. олс WM olos)
oloso² rope, cord, strip (Kh. олс Bu. WM olos)
oloxo to get, to gain, to obtain
ono year
oncogoy special
ondoo different
ongoylgoxo to open
ongoyxo to open (up)/to be opened
oniloko to aim
onisga riddle
onoko to hit (the mark), to aim
ooli adze
orco entrance
orčim around, about
orilo xo to cry, to howl, to yell, to scream, to crow
orilyočogoor approximately (Kh. өйрөлцөөгөөр) ≡ oyrilcogoor
orluulka to replace
oro bed
oro dərnee kərəgsəl bed clothes
oroko to come in, to go in
orolcoxo to participate
oroldoxo to attempt
oron gər home
oron nutag locality
oronee daabuu bed sheet
oroox to twine round, to entwine, to wrap, to bind up
oros Russia (Kh. опос; Bu. ород; WM oros)
orosee cagaan kaan Russian tsar
orosee solongos kün a Korean Russian
orošin suugči inhabitant
oroy¹ summit
oroy² late
oroy³ evening
oroy bolgon every evening
oroyn kool supper, dinner
oroyn mənd xürgəyi Good evening!
oršuulga funeral
osgon bacagan youngest daughter
osgon kübüün youngest son
oy forest
oy kübči forest
oyidolo sewing ≡ oyodolo
oylogoko to understand
oyodolo sewing ≡ oyidolo
oyoko to sew
oyrd recently
oyri near or oyryuu
oyrilcogoor approximately orilyočogoor
oyro dotono intimate, familiar
oyro xabi nearby
oyrtaka to near
oyryuu near oyri

(/ö/)
öbüg əcəg grandfather
öbüg əcəga grandfather
öör different, different one
ööröö for oneself əərəə

/p/
palimood machine gun (< Ru. пулемёт)
palitoo overcoat (< Ru. пальто) paltoo
paltoo overcoat (< Ru. пальто) palitoo
pateer photo (< Ru. фотография?) (Kh. патиар)
pееšiŋ stove (< Ru. печ?) (Kh. пийшин)
pisaa bedbug (Kh. бясаа; Bu. бисаа; WM bisa)
pürba garigi Thursday (< Ti. phur-bu + Sa. graha)

/s/
saaku to milk
saalyee ünyee milking cow
saarul grey
sab suulga utensils, vessels, pots and pans
sabaa rod
saban soap
sabcixu to chop (Kh. цавчи; Bu. сабшаха; WM čabčiqu)
sabka chopstick
sagagu buckwheat
sagul overall designation for beard, mustache, whiskers (Kh. сахал; Bu. hахал; WM сaqa)a) ≅ saxalee tongorog
sala raft
saliki wind
salkilaka to blow (wind)
salkin cecag ebüčin German measles, rubella
saltoo crutch, perineum (Kh. салттаa; Bu. халтаa; WM saltaγ-a)
saluku to divorce, to depart, to leave, to part
samarga [çamarga/samarga] storm, snowstorm, blizzard (Kh. шаьмарга; Bu. шамарга; WM simarγ-a) ≅ šamarga
samca shirt ≅ camca
samnuur [samnoor] rake, scarifier
samnuuxu to comb
samu comb (Kh. сам; Bu. хам; WM sam)
samu korkoy shrimp ≅ sam xorxoy
samu xorxoy shrimp ≅ sam korkoy
samuuree Japan (< Ja. さむらい[samurai])
sanaa joboxo to worry, to be worried, to be anxious
sanaačľaga initiative
sanaand oroxo to occur to, to come to mind, to recall
sanal opinion
sanaxu to think, to regard as ≅ sanuku
sandul chair (< Ar. şandalî) (Kh. сандал; Bu. сандалî; WM sandali)
sanuku to remember ≅ sanaxu
sanuuu thought, idea, opinion (Kh. санаа; Bu. ханаа; WM sanayγ-a)
saŋgin green onion (Kh. сонгино; Bu. хонгино; WM songgin-a)
sar büri every month
sar jügiı wasp (Kh. шар зөгий; Bu. шара зүгы; WM sir-a jögei)
sara moon
saraam lily, Lilium (It may be a simple pronunciation error of / saraana/) ≅ saraana
saraana  lily, Lilium šaraam
sarabi  cow shed, cattle pen
sarabčutee malagay  cap šaraabyūte malagay
sarabyūte malagay  cap šaraabčutee malagay
saree süül  last ten days of a month
sareen dund  second ten days of a month
sareen ek  first ten days of a month
sarisan bagbaakay  bat
sarmagčin  monkey
sarsan myəka  roast meat šarsan myəka
sar  month
saxalee tongorog  razor, shaver sagul
saxixu  to defend, to protect
sayd  minister
sayi  million
saykan  just (now), recently, just before
sayn  good
sayn baynat gü  How are you! Good day!
sayn biš  not good
sayxan  beauty, pretty, beautiful
sayxan noyrsobot gü  Good morning! (Did you sleep nicely?)
seeri nuraga  vertebrae, backbone
seeryügü šüdtee samu  coarse comb
səbхə  to winnow (Kh. сэвэх)
sədkil xanaxu  to be satisfied
səəbül  Seoul (the capital of Korea) (< Ko. 서울[səwul])
səgsuur  sieve (Kh. шигшүүр; WM sigsigür)
səjigtee  suspicious
səkuund  second (1/60 minute)
səlűür  oar
səlűürdəkə  to oar, to ruw
səreex  to wake up, to awaken (transitive)
sərixi  to wake up (intransitive)
sərűün  cool
sətgil  mind, thought
sətgüül  magazine, journal
siilkə to carve, to cut, to engrave (Kh. сийлэх; Bu. хиилэхэ; WM seylekü)
silə soup
simə secretly, stealthily
sogdxo to get drunk
sogoo toe
sokor kūn blind person
sokor namin mule-rat, mole, Myospalax myospalax (Kh. сохор номин)
solaŋga rainbow (Kh. солонго; Bu. холонго; WM solangγ-a/solongγ-a)
solgxo to take off, to separate (Kh. сағах)
soljir əبارтэй үхэр a cattle which has only one horn (Kh. солжир эвэртэй үхэр)
soljir əбартэе үкүр2 a cattle which has crooked horn (Kh. хазгай эвэртэй үхэр)
solonγa weasel (Kh. солонго; Bu. холонго; WM solongγ-a)
solonγos Korea (Kh. Солонгос; WM solongγos)
solyeerxu to go crazy, to go mad
solyəka to change
sona dragonfly
sonin newspaper
sonirkoltee interesting
sonsoxo to listen, to hear
soŋguuli election
soŋgxo to elect, to select, to choose
soolxo to pierce chestra čoolxo
soribi scar chestra soribya
soribya scar chestra soribi
sormuus eyelashes
soxoy lime
soyil culture chestra soyol
soyja [sɔːdə] brush (＜Chinese 刷子[shuāzi])
soyol culture chestra soyil
soyoo  bud, sprout, shoot
sööma  sööm, distance between the tips of the outstretched index finger and the thumb
subaga  channel, canal, ditch
sudas  blood vessel
sudasnee čakilt  pulse surasnee čokilt
sudasnee čokilt  pulse surasnee čakilt
sudlaxa  to study
suga  armpit
sul tal  weak point, shortcoming, defect, demerit sur tal
sula  loosen
suluun šugam  straight line
sumaa¹  arrow
sumaa²  bullet
sumaa³  an administrative unit over bags and under an aimag
surgaxa  to stretch out, to extend
suragača  to tame, to train, to break (a horse)
suraka  to learn
surgači  pupil
surguuli  school
surimis  garlic surimiš
surimyəs  garlic surimiš
surka  to learn
surtalčilaxu  to publicize
surun  leather strap, leather rope
suruulka  to relax, to loosen, to slacken (Kh. sulruula; Bu. сулураул; WM sularayulqu)
suryəgaxa  to tame, to train, to break (a horse)
suuda  soon (Kh. шууд; Bu. šuud; WM siγud)
suuj bayxa  to sit, to sit down
suuka  to sit
suuri  base, foundation, base
suuri nuryuga  vertebrae, backbone (Kh. сээр нууу; Bu. нюрга hær; WM seger, niruγu)
suyree čiluu  foundation stone, cornerstone (Kh. суурь чулуу) sur
Appendix 1: Vocabulary  165

suyree čuluu
suyree čuluu  foundation stone, cornerstone (Kh. суурь чулую)  суурь чулую
suyree čiluu
suyrsan sabu  basket (Kh. сийрсэн сав)
süjik  to plait, to weave
sükə  axe
süküj suuxa  to kneel down
süləčìn  the last, final
süləgə  poem, poetry
süləkə  to swim
süləm  sword, sabre (Kh. сэлэм)
süləs  saliva  сүлүс
süljikə  to weave, to knit
sülür nüdtex  squint-eyed
sülüs  saliva  сүлүс
sümə kyeed  monastery, temple
sün  at night
sün dond  midnight
sūnə  night
sūrməs  sinew
sūrügə  herd, flock
sūtüləgə  piety, faith, worship, religion
sūu  milk
sūū uuxa  to drink milk
sūūdar¹  shadow
sūūdar²  dew
sūūkə  to judge, to try
sūūl  tail
sūūlčee  the last, final  суулчи
sūūlčin  the last, final  суулчы
sūūlee üyid  recently
sūūləda  later
sūūlünée üd  feathers of the tail
sūūmjilkə  to criticize
sūydaək  to ruin, to destroy
A Study of the Mongol Khamnigan Spoken in Northeastern Mongolia

/š/

šaajaŋ ayaga (porcelain) bowl
šaajaŋ ødəlal chinaware
šaajgay magpie
šaardaxa to demand šaarduxa
šaarduxa to demand šaardaxa
šabar širuu clay
šabiji insect
šaayay anklebone, talus
šagayaku to look, to peer
šagširaxa to tut-tut, to admire, to praise
šal øærügü exact reverse, direct opposition øæryəgə
šalağalța test, examination
šaljlax to parboil
šalnee alčuur floor-cloth
šamarga [çamarga/samarga] storm, snowstorm, blizzard (Kh. шамарга; Bu. шамарга; WM simarγ-a) samarga
šanaga ladle, dipper
šaraj çansan myəka roasted and boiled meat
šarama a flattened cake (It is not identified in Mongolian and Tungus dictionaries.) (Kh. шараам 1. suffocating heat 2. water mixed with milk and boiled)
šaril [tɛırla/çeril] corpse çılə
šarsan myəka roast meat sarsan myəka
šaru castrated bull, ox
šata ladder šita
šaxaltu pressure, compulsion
šekə to urine
šees urine
šiabar baar (earthen) jar, (earthen) pot
šiabar bayšin clay house
šibarlag gajaran bog, marsh, morass
šibnəχə to whisper
šibuu bird (Kh. шувуу; Bu. шубуу; WM sibəγəu)
Appendix 1: Vocabulary  167

šibügü  awl, drill (Kh. шөвөр WM sibüge) ➞ xibügü
šidkə  to throw
šidü  tooth
šig  like, as if
šigəəroo  straight on, straight forward
šiidəm  club
šiidəŋ  electric light, electric lamp (˂ Ch. 气灯[qìdēng])
šiiigneel  ulaan korkoy  earthworm (Kh. чийгийн улаан хорхой Bu. шийиг ‘damp, wet’)
šiigwa  watermelon
šiiryügü šiidtee  samu  coarse comb
šiittgəl  punishment, penalty
šiittgəxə  to punish
šikür  umbrella (Kh. шүхэр Bu. шүхэр WM sikür)
šilbə¹  trunk, stem, stalk
šilbə²  shin, shin-bones
šildəg  mattress, mat
šildəgə  picked, best, chosen
šilə¹  floor
šilə²  glass
šilən  ayagu  (drinking) glass
šilij  abaxa  to choose
šiljüülkə  to transfer, to hand over
šiltag  cause, motive, pretext, excuse (Kh. шалтаг; Bu. шалтаг; WM siltaγ)
šiltagaa  reason, cause
šilüüis  lynx (Lynx lynx)
šimeesəg  scythe
šin  new ➞ šinü
šin jil  new year
šinaga  ladle, dipper
šinaxa  to boil ➞ činaxa
šineel  arban taban  the fifteenth day of the first month of the lunar year
šineel  nəγən  first day of a month


šinee xoyoron  second day of a month
šineen araban taban  fifteenth day of a month
šineen gurban  third day of a month
šinəkən  fresh
šinələkə  to celebrate the new year
šinje  feature, sign, characteristic
šinų  new  new
šingə bajaxa  to press, to squeeze, to grab, to grasp, to manipulate
šingən  thin (for tea, soup, etc.)
šingən bəki  ink
šingəxu  to be absorbed
šīnkay  China, Chinese (< Ch. 上海 [shànghǎi] ‘Shanghai city’)
šīnkor  falcon
šir  yellow  yellow
šir budaa  German millet
šir šibuu  great eagle-owl
šir šubuu  great eagle-owl
šir toso  butter
šira  yellow  yellow
širaka  wound
širaxa  to roast, to fry
širbəkə [çirbəkə, širbəkə]  to look askance
širee  table
širguulj  ant
širgəəx  to dry up
širkəga  grain, granule
širuu  soil, earth
širüün  rough, coarse
šiš  African millet
šita  ladder, stairs, staircase (Kh. шат; Bu. шата; WM шатун)  šata
šitaax  to burn
šixaraxa  turbid, cloudy
šixaxa  to press, to impel, to urge
šobko  pointed, sharp
šodoy  penis
Appendix 1: Vocabulary 169

šoo dürbüljín kəlbəri cubic, cuboid
šorbogo salty
šubuunee üür bird’s nest
šubuunee xušuu beak
šugam line
šukula important
šuluun gədəs rectum
šuluun šugam straight line
šungaxa to extend
šurguulga drawer
šurugaaga mod pole, post
šuudanəee gajar [ço:xne: yadzar] post office
šuugantee noisy, sensational
šünjinəə all night through
šütkə to believe in, to worship
šüümjilka to criticize
šüürə broom

/t/

ta you (singular, polite)
taabar riddle
taaju ceiling (Kh. taaаз; WM taja)
taanu Allium polyrhizum
taarakgüy incorrect, wrong
taaraxu to fit, to suit, to meet
taaruldux to come across
taaruu mediocre, middling, not too good, poor
taba five
tabadugaar fifth
tabadugaar sar May
tabag plate, dish
tabi fifty
tabiuur shelf, stand, rack тə tabiyuur
tabixa  to release, to let go, to free  ~ tabixu
tabixu  to put, to place  ~ tabixa
tabiyuur  shelf, stand, rack  ~ tabuuur
tabtee  quiet, undisturbed, comfortable
tabtee noyrsoryəkti  Good night! Have a nice sleep!
tabyəxu  to put, to place
taglaanee kalib  lid
tagnuul  spy
tagnuxu  to spy on
tagtaa  dove, pigeon
takee  chicken
takilgay süm  shrine
takilgay širəə  altar
taku  horseshoe
taliigaač  the late, the departed
taliyeka  to lean, to deviate, to tilt, to decline
talk  bread
tamaga  brand
tamik  tobacco
tamik tatxə  to smoke (a cigarette)
tamu  hell
tanil  acquaintance
tanilcuulka  to introduce
tanuuus  you (plural)
tanuusee  your (plural)
tanyəagüy  not to know
tanyəxu  to know
taraambay  streetcar (< Ru. трамва'й)
taraga  tarag, a foot made from fermented milk and tastes similar
to yoghurt
taraxu  to disperse, to scatter
tarbuga  marmot (Marmot baibacina sibirca)
tarbus  watermelon
tareečin  farmer, peasant  ~ tariačin ayl
tareenee aaga  husks, bran
Appendix 1: Vocabulary

**targun** fat, in good condition
**tariačin ayl** farm household
**tarialaŋee talbee** cultivating land
**tarian talbay kagalku** to cultivate
**tarian türüü** ear, spike, head
**tarianee dəbuuri** winnow
**tarianee gajar** cultivating land
**tarianee kibigü [teriæne: ki^wbi^wəgə^w/teriæne: kʰyβyɡu]** outer husks, bran (Kh. тарианы хэвэг)
**tariki** brain
**tarimal urgamal** cultivated plant
**tarixa** to plant
**taryabuus** watermelon
**tasalbara** ticket, coupon
**tasluxu** to cut off, to tear, to tear off
**tašuura** whip
**tataari** a Tatar
**tatgaljuχu** to refuse, to decline, to renounce, to withdraw from
**tatuxu** to pull
**tayag** stick, staff
**taybširaxa** to relax, to calm down
**tayja** stage
**taylbarlaka** to explain
**tayluku** to take off (clothes)
**teberyəxə** to embrace, to hold in the arms
**telipoon utas** telephone (< Ru. телефон)
**tepegay** dung, excrement, cattle dung (It is not identified in Mongolian, Tungus, and Russian dictionaries.)
**tebiryəkə** to embrace, to hold in the arms
**təbna** pack-needle, big needle
**təd** those
**tədnee** their
**təbəriliχ** to transport, to carry
**təg** zero
**təgəj** to do that way
təgš even, smooth
təiima like that
təjéebər nugas tame duck
təjéesan acəx foster father
təjéesan aṣag foster father
təjéesan axə foster mother
təlyee trouser belt, trouser string
təmbüü syphilis
təmcək to struggle for
təmcəldək to compete, to struggle, to contest
təmdəg sign, mark
təmdəgləlt üdür commemoration day, day of remembrance
təməə camel
təməəljiğan cricket
tənax to wander
təŋər sky ʊŋə təŋərə
təŋəree duu thunderbolt
tənʊϋčilək to wander
tər¹ he, she, it (personal and demonstrative pronoun)
tər² that (demonstrative adjective)
tərəm billon
ərə that ʊə tər²
tərə jüg that direction
tərəg cart, wagon
tərgəl saran full moon
tərgən ursgal rapids, fast-flowing stream (Kh. түрγэн урсгал;
Bu. түрγэн; WM түргэн)
təsəx to bear, to put up with
təygbəl then, if so ʊə tiygbəl
tiigbəl then, if so ʊə təygbəl
tiim Yes!
tiim bayna it is like that
tiima in that manner
tiimi sayn biş not so good
tiişee to that direction
tijeeχə to raise, to feed । tajeebər nugas, tajeesən əcəx, tajeesən əsəq, tajeesən əxə, etc.
todorokoy clear, definite
todorokoyguy unclear, uncertain, indefinite
togloom¹ game, play
togloom² toy
togolku to play (Kh. тоглοх)
togoloxo to play, to perform (Kh. тоглοх)
togoo cauldron
togoruu crane
togśix to knock
togtocoloo system
togtoxo to be formed, to come into existence
tokioldol case, occurrence, chance, circumstances, situation
tokom saddle cloth/felt placed under the güłümə
tokoy elbow
tolgayn əbčin headache । tolgayn əbüçin
tolgayn əbüçin headache । tolgayn əbčin
tolgoylogči chief, head, boss
toli bičig dictionary
tologaym übüşə to have a headache (‘My head is aching’)
tologoy head
tolyi mirror
tom bacagan eldest daughter
tom küü eldest son
tomo big
tomoxo to twist, to spin
tono ton (1,000kg)
tonšuul woodpecker
toŋgoylgoxo to bend over
tongrə god । təŋqər (Kh. тəңгəр; Bu. тэнгəри; WM tngri)
too number, figure
too kəmjee quantity
tooocoko to calculate, to account, to compute
toolko to count
toon təmdǝg figure, numeral
toono wooden roof-ring of the Mongol tent
toora peach
toorko barrel, cask (Kh. торх)
toosga brick
tooso dust
torgo silk
torgon utas silk thread
toro net
tortogo bolxo to get sooty, to get grimy
tos oil
tos šilxǝxǝ to squeeze oil from
totgonee mod lintel
totxon village (Kh. тосхон; Bu. тосхон; WM tosqon)
toyrku to go round
töörükǝ to get lost
traagtor tractor (< Ru. тра́ктор)
tuga flag, standard
tugalǝ lead (Pb)
tugalaga lead (Pb)
tukaylbal in fact, actually, as a matter of fact
turaxa to get thin, to lose weight
turšyylaga experience
turuu hoof
tus tus each, individually, separately
tus tusdaa separately, respectively
tuslalca xa to help each other
tuslaxa to help
tušaal order, command
tutaraga rice
tuuj novelette
tuuka to drive (cattle)
tuulay hare, rabbit
tuyaarxa to shine, to gleam, to glisten
tuyladaka to be tired (Kh. туйлдах)
tüb center
tübüg trouble, nuisance, inconvenience
tübügte difficult, troublesome, intricate, complicated
tüdgeləxə to abstain, to refrain
tügürüg tügrig (Mongolian currency unit)
tül young animal, new born animal
tülbülgəə plan
tülee modo firewood
tülkəkə to push
tülküür key
tülši fuel
tülükə¹ to burn, to make a fire
tülükə² to pay
tüma ten thousands üf arban minə, arban myəŋə
tümpün bowl, basin (< ch. 鋼盆[tòngpén])
tümur iron
tümur dabtaku to beat iron, to forge iron
tümur jam railroad
tümur utas iron wire
tümüsa potatoes
tümüsgə testicle
tünd there üf tənd
tünteek bulging, protuberant, covex
tür temporal
tür juura for a while, temporarily üf türi juura
tür nayr wedding ceremony
türgixə to spread on, to apply
türiite gutal boots
türsün nutag native place
türsün üdür birthday
türü juura for a while, temporarily üf türi juura
türükə to be born
türül sadan relatives
türüükə to give birth to
türüülkə to come first, to be ahead, to lead, to overtake
tüstee  like, similar
tüüj abxa  to pick up
tüük¹  history
tüük²  to pick, to collect, to gather
tüükee¹  suppuration, sore
tüükee²  raw
tüükee myaka  raw meat
tüükee süü  raw milk
tüükee yum  raw stuff, uncooked food
tyəmuul  mosquito Čumuul

/u/

učir  reason
učiro  reason
udaa kübüün  second son üd udaa küü
udaa küü  second son üd udaa kübüün
udaa küükən [ota: kʰu:kʰiŋ]  second daughter
udaa modo [ota: madə]  willow, salix üd modo
udaan  slow, slowly
udagan  female shaman (Kh. удган; Bu. удаган; WM iduγan/idoγan) Čedəgan
udaxa  to tarry, to stay, to last a long time, to be a long time
ugaaku  to wash
uglaaš  slippers
ugtaxa  to greed, to receive, to welcome
ukaantee  clever
ukaarka  to understand, to realize
ukaraxa  to retreat, to go backward üdr uxraxa
ukaxa  to dig
ukin  maiden, maid
ukn  breeding he-goat (Kh. ухна; Bu. ухана; WM uqun-a/uqan-a)
ulaan  red
ulaan buuday  wheat
ulaan buudayn guril  wheat flour
ulaan buurcag  red-bean
ulaan jəs  red copper
ulaan yagaan purple
ulad country, state ulas, ulus
ulam l gradually
ulas country, state ulad, ulus
ulas tür politics
ulasee kaan king
ulbagur weak (for a person)
uliral season
ulus contrt, nation ulad, ulas
ulyaangar mod aspen
ulyaas poplar (Kh. улиас; Bu. ғилжан)
umara north
unaa mount, transport, vehicle
unaga colt
unagaaka to drop
unaka¹ to fall, to be drowned
unaka² to mount (a horse)
unalaganee mori riding horse
unaxa to fall, to be drowned
undaa beverage
uni house rafter
untaglaxa to pulverize, to reduce to powder
untaka to sleep
untraaxa 1. to put out a fire 2. to turn off
uŋgaka to break wind, to fart
uŋgas fart, gas, wind
uŋšixa to read
ura tumor, swelling
urada south
uragaca crops, harvest
uragdaxa to be torn
uragšee forwards
uraka  to bite
uramšuulka  to encourage
uraxa  to tear, to tear up
urca  hut, shack, tent set up for temporary use with the least wooden frames
urgamal  plant
urguulka  to grow
urid sün  last night
urid üdür ny  previous day
urid ümün  previously, before
urjee urjigdar  three days ago, two days before yesterday
urjigdar  day before yesterday
urjīnan  the year before last
ursaxa  to flow
urta¹  length
urta²  long
urtasgaxa  to lengthen, to extend
uru ċidwar  artistry, skill
uruuu  towards
uruula  lip
us  water
usan ongoc  boat, vessel
usan ongocnee jogcool  marina, dock
usan săň  water-tank, cistern
usan üjüm  grape
usand abtaxa  be flooded, to be inundated, to be submerged
usand dal oroko  to sink under water, to submerged under water
usand oroxo  to take a bath
usanee ærgüülgi  whirlpool
usanee gutal  rubber boots
usanee san  reservoir
usul tal  weak point, shortcoming, defect, demerit
utaa  smoke
utaga  meaning
utas  thread
Appendix 1: Vocabulary 179

utgaxa  to scoop up, to ladle
uučlal ərəx to apologize, to ask for forgiveness
uuka  to drink
uul  mountain
uulanaas uruusxa  to go down a mountain
uuland garaku  to go up a mountain
uulee kir  mountain ridge, crest ⇆ uuliin kir
uulee orgil  summit, peak
uulee oroy  mountain peak
uuli  owl
uuliin kir  mountain ridge, crest ⇆ uulee kir
uuljalta  meeting, get-together
uuljaxa  to meet
uulnee bel  foot of a hill, low slopes of a mountain
uura  vapour, steam
uura nüdüür  mortar and pestle
uuraga  horse-catching pole
uurga  colostrum
uurga tarika  brain
uurlaxa  to get angry
uuska  to dissolve
uušig  lung
uuşignee süryəə  pulmonary tuberculosis
uxraxa  to retreat ⇆ ukaraxa
uyan katan  flexible, supple
uyilka  to cry
uytgarlaxa  melancholy, sad, despondent
uytgartee  dull, boring, depressing

/*ü*/

übčin  illness, sickness, disease ⇆ əcəcəg əbüčin
übčin tusaka  to become ill
übčiton  patient
übəgün old man (Kh. өвгөн; Bu. үбгэн)
übüdəgə knee (Kh. өвдөг; Bu. үбдөг)
übül winter (Kh. өөл; Bu. үбэл)
übüs grave (Kh. өвс; Bu. үбөн)
übüs nogoо julaаaku to pull up grass
ücəa rarely, few (Kh. үөөн; Bu. үсөөн)
üčiγdar yesterday (Kh. өчигдөр; Bu. үсэглдөр)
üd dund noon
üde feather
üdəas tie, binding, lace
üdəas ümün before noon
üdəas xoγʃ afternoon
üdəkə to see off, to send off, to bid farewell to
üdər day, daytime (Kh. өдөр; Bu. үдэр) üdür
üdür day, daytime (Kh. өдөр; Bu. үдэр) üdər
üdər bolgon [utur bəγəγə] everyday (Kh. өдөр болгон; Bu. үдэр болгон)
üdüree kool lunch (Kh. өдрийн хоол; Bu. үдэрэй хоол)
üdüüγəa now (Kh. өдгөө)
üg yaree talk (Kh. үг яриа; Bu. үгэ яряа)
üγəaκə to lose (Kh. үгэх; Bu. үгэхэ) ü γəаκə
üγəəмəγə generous, rich, plentiful (Kh. өгөөмөр)
üγiiləxə to drive (cattle) ü γiiləхə
ügüləa [ukləa] morning (Kh. өглөө; Bu. үглөө)
ügüləa бүрι [ukləa buri/ugləa buri] every morning (Kh. өглөө бүр; Bu. үглөө бүри)
ügüλəənee kool [uγuλəənee kʰːγʃ] breakfast (Kh. өглөөний хоол; Bu. үглөөний хоол)
ügüöləg short story (Kh. өгүүллөг)
ügüxə to give (Kh. өгөх; Bu. үгэхэ)
ügüy No! (Kh. Үгүй!; Bu. Үгы!)
ügüy boloko to extinct
üiλčiləkə# to serve
üjəa pen (for writing)
üjəkə to see
Appendix 1: Vocabulary

üjəł surtal ideology
üjən yadaka to hate
üjüüləkə to show (the contents)
üjüür point, end, tip
üjüürələkə to sharpen, to bring to a point
ükəkə to die
ükəl death
ükin düü younger sister (Kh. охин дүү; WM ökin degüü) ükəl
üköörikan cute, attractive (Kh. хөөрхөн; Bu. хөөрхэн; WM kögerken) ükəl
ükür cattle (Kh. үхэр; Bu. үхэр)
ükürčin cattle breeder, cowherd
üküree mykəa beef
ülbyənki raccoon dog (Kh. элбэнх; Bu. (Cognate word unavailable); WM elbengkii)
üldəəkə to keep, to retain 1768
üldəkə to remain, to stay, to be left behind üldəkə
üldögdəl remnant, remains, leftovers
üleek to blow
ülgəxə to hang (Kh. өлгөх; Bu. үлгэхэ; WM elgükü/ölgökü)
üligər story, tale (Kh. үлгэр; Bu. үльгэр)
ültəgələŋ [ик̠ь эүэ1эдэ, urt̠həłəŋə] hunger, fasting (Kh. элсгөлөн; Bu. үлэсхэлэн; WM ölüsküleng) ültəgələŋ
ülü mör footprint, trace, track (Kh. ул мөр; Bu. мүр ула)
ülldəkə to remain, to stay ülldəkə
ülugəkə toogoo hanging cauldron
ülüsk to starve, to hunger (Kh. өлсөх; Bu. үлдэхэ; WM ölöskü)
ümad trousers (Kh. өмд; Bu. үмдэ; WM ömödü)
üməxirisən mod dead tree (Kh. өмхийрсөн мод; Bu. үмхирЬэн модо; WM ömükeiregsen modu)
üməgəəlkə to protect, to defend (Kh. өмгөөлөх; Bu. үмэглэхэ; WM ömüglekü)
ümügləə clay house (It sounds like a Mongolian word but not identified in dictionaries.) üümügləə
ümün south, front
ümüskə to put on (clothes) (Kh. өмсөх; Bu. үмдэх; WM emüskü)
uncia corner, angle (Kh. өнцөг; Bu. үнсэг; WM önöög) üncög
üncög corner, angle (Kh. өнцөг; Bu. үнсэг; WM önöög) üncəx
üncin kəəgəd orphan (Kh. өнчин хүүхэд; Bu. үншэн үхивүүн;
WM önöчин keüked) üncəx
üncəx corner, angle (Kh. өнцөг; Bu. үнсэг; WM önöög) üncin küügüd
üncin küügüd orphan (Kh. өнчин хүүхэд; Bu. үншэн үхивүүн;
WM önöчин keüked) üncin küügüd
ündər 1. high 2. hight (Kh. өндөр; Bu. үндэр; WM öndör) ündür
ündəs root, base, foundation (Kh. үндэс; Bu. үндэхэ; WM
ündüsü) ündös, ündüsə
ündös root, base, foundation (Kh. үндэс; Bu. үндэхэ; WM
ündüsü) ündəs, ündüsə
ündösten nationality, race (Kh. үндестэн; WM ündüsten)
ündüg [unduk] egg (Kh. өндөр; Bu. үндэгэ; WM öndеge)
ündüg daraxu [undug taraxa/untug taraxa] to hatch, to brood
ündür [undərə/undur] 1. high 2. hight (Kh. өндөр; Bu. үндэр;
WM öndör) ündür
ündür nirugutee tall
ündür única high price
ündüsə root, base, foundation (Kh. үндэс; Bu. үндэхэ; WM
ündüsü) ündəs, ündös
únə [una] price (Kh. үнэ; Bu. үнэ; WM ün-e)
únə cən value, price (Kh. үнэ цэн; Bu. үнэ сэн)
ünəg fox (Kh. үнэг; Bu. үнэтэй; WM ünege)
ünər garxu to smell (intransitive)
ünərləkə to smell (transitive) (Kh. үнəрлэх; WM ünərлэх)
ünər smell (Kh. үнəр; Bu. үнөр; WM ünər)
ünət expensive (Kh. үнəтэй; Bu. үнəтэй; WM ünəтэй)
ünün true, truth (Kh. үнэн; Bu. үнэн; WM ünen)
ününči bayka sincere, faithful
ününəsə tiim It is really so, It is truly so
ünüsəka to kiss (Kh. үнэх; WM ünüskü)
ünyee cow (Kh. үнээ; Bu. үнээ; WM üniy-e)
ünqii ny ergüülka to turn over, to turn inside out ergüülki
Appendix 1: Vocabulary 183

үңгү color (Kh. өнгө; Bu. үнгэ; WM öngge) ᠴɳгү
үңгүрсүн past
үңгүрсүн сара last month
үңгүрсүн üdürüüd old days
үңгүрэх to pass (Kh. өнгөрэх; Bu. үнгэрэх; WM önggerekü)
үңкөрэх to roll (Kh. өнхрэх; WM ömkerekü)
үрелээ wrinkle, crease ᠪүрэлээ
үрэлээ wrinkle, crease ᠪүрэлээ
үрэ ачи offsprings
үрэ ашиги effectiveness
үрэ дүңt result
үрэ йимис fruit
үрэ йимис дәлгөрэхэ to fruit
үрэ кони wether (Kh. эр хонь) ᠬөрэ мори, etc.
үрээ room
үрөөсүн нидүүн one-eyed person ᠬүрөөсүн нийдүүн
үрөөсүн нийдүүн one-eyed person ᠬүрөөсүн нийдүүн
үрөгөң 1. wide 2. area 3. width, breadth
үрөкэ to rub
үрөгөң 1. to lift 2. to offer, to present
үрөлжилэкэ to go on, to continue
үрөлжилүүлэкэ to continue
үрөмөр бөгөгөн adoptive daughter
үрөмөр күбүүн adoptive son
үрөн 1. wide 2. area 3. width, breadth
үрөн жам wide road
үрөн тал plain
үрөскө thorn
үрөст көмкө cucumber
үри seed
үри чәчка to scatter (seeds)
үркү ачү household(s)
үрны west
үрөөшүү [үрөөшүү] gracious, merciful, kind
үртгөлөн hunger, fasting (Kh. өлсөлөн; Bu. үлэсхэлэн; WM
ölüskülen) ültəgəlen
ürübəkə# to pity, to feel sorry for, to take pity on
ürümə awl, drill
üründ oroxo to get into debt
ürxü gər home
üə hair, hair of one’s head, hair of one’s body
üəə abkuulka to get one’s hair cut
üəkə to grow
üşgee heel
üşəxə to bring up, to raise, to rear
üsrəkə to leap, to jump, to skip
üşüə letter, character
üşün hair of human body
üşünee kaaga danduff, scurf
üşütee gutal fur boots
üşütee malaguy fur hat
üşiğiləxə to kick
üttügün 1. strong (for tea, soup etc.), 2. dense, thick
üüdə door
üüdan şüdü front tooth, incisor
üülə cloud
üür dawn, daybreak
üür cayka to dawn
üürəgə duty, burden
üürkə to bear a thing on one’s shoulder, to carry on the back
üyeerə flood
üya period, time
üyaəl cousins
üyaəl bacagan niece
üyaəl agəči düü cousins (When the elder one is a female)
üyaəl kübüü nephew
üyaəl küü nephew
üyl ajillaga activity, work, function
üyl yabadal process, doings, event
üylčülüüləğč customer, client
Appendix 1: Vocabulary

üyldərəlxə to produce
üyldərə factory
üysən tüys tall birch-bark vessel
üyũ məç joint

(/w/)

waara pot əɾ baara¹
waaran ədləl ceramics

/x/

xabyərgan sara crescent moon, new moon əɾ kabirgan sara
xadagaluulka to save
xadasan öbs hay, dried grass əɾ kadasan öbs
xaduku to mow, to reap əɾ kaduxu
xaduurka to harden, to get hard
xagaruxu¹ to shatter, to be broken (intransitive)
xagaruxu² to crack, to split, to break
xagšixa to contract, to shrink əɾ agšixa (Kh. əɾ wəx Bu. wəxə) əɾ wəxə (Kh. əɾ wəx Bu. wəxə)
WM ayəsilı)
xajuxa to bite əɾ kajuxa
xalgu palm əɾ algu
xalisulku to peel əɾ kalisluku
xaltarij unaxa to slip and fall
xaluχu to heat
xamaarka to depend on əɾ kamaarka
xamalalt promise əɾ amalalt
xamaree nük nostrils əɾ kamaree nük
xandaj kələx to appeal əɾ xandaj kələx
xandaj kələx to appeal əɾ xandaj kələx
xanguxu to supply
xara kükü indigo, dark deep blue əɾ kar kükü
A Study of the Mongol Khamnigan Spoken in Northeastern Mongolia

xara salki typhoon, hurricane
xaraaxan hardly, not yet
xaraglajaxa to supervise, to look after karaglajuxu
xaramči stingy, misery karamči
xargilaga swift stream flowing over stones
xarigixan shallow (water) karigixan
xarii bürii bolxo to grow dark karee bürii bolko
xariiulka to repay, to requite kariiulka
xaryaalqo to be subordinate to, to be within the preview of
xasag Kazakh kasag
xashe fence
xaši šeluu jade kaši čuluu
xašilag fence kašilag
xatuxu to dry up katuxu
xayaal aka düü male second cousins
xyalaas elm tree
xalčar negotiation kalačər
xalčax to discuss, to converse kalačəx
xasq juur for a while
xibügü awl, drill šibügü
xolyxo to mix kolyxo
xoničin shepherd
xoninee myəka mutton
xonjuu gain, profit konjuu
xool kiik to cook
xool künüs food
xoolonee tikinolog cookery, culinary art (Ru. техноло'гия)
(Kh. хоолны технологи)
xooslxo to empty out kooslko
xoridugaar twentieth koridugaar
xorigilogu to prohibit, to forbid, to ban
xoyor juu two hundreds koyor juu
xoyor kün two people koyor kün
xoyordugaar dabkar second floor
Appendix 1: Vocabulary

xoyordugaar sar  February
xoyordugaarčə  February
xoyšo  backwards
xoyuulaa  two of us together  koyuulaa
xubin  pail, bucket ( `< Chinese 壺瓶[húpíng])
xučixa  to cover, to cover up  kučixa
xuda  daughter-in-law’s relatives
xudaquy  son-in-law’s relatives
xudlдаačин  merchant
xugacaa  period, time, term  kugacaa
xugurxa  to break, to be broken, to be fractured
xulanc xügšee  great-great-grandfather  kulanc kügšee
xulčigar  timid, fearful
xulгайlaxa  to steal
xuuray  dry  kuuray, kuuree, xuuree
xuuray bək  ink-stick  xuuray bəxi
xuuray bəxi  ink-stick  xuuray bək
xuuree  dry  kuuree, xuuray, kuuray
xuuree aχa  elder sister’s husband. The word xyyпа́и (‘dry’) is used as an attribute to denote someone who is regarded as one’s own family member but who is not related in blood or marriage in Khalkha, which is similar to the Chinese 干[gān] ‘dry’. An Alar Buriat consultant of 1997 fieldwork study, Mrs. Eleonora Vladimirovna Tumurova (41 years old) used the word xuuree aχa for ‘husband’.  kuuree aχa
xüči  power  küči, xüčütee, etc.
xüči тəŋкəə  strength, vigour
xüčitee casan šuurag  snowstorm, blizzard
xüčünee kəmjəə  degree of strength, intensity
xüčütee  strong  kučütee, küči, etc.
xüqšin xün  old person  kügšin kün
xüknee toбči  nipple
xüлусүлкə  to employ
xüreelkə  to surround, to make a circle
xүրкə  to get cold, to cool down
xüügəə ürgəj abaxa  to adopt a child
xüügən  child
xüüxən karaa  pupil of the eye

/y/

yaaguud  why
yaa⁸  how
yaaʃu  to hurry
yaasan č  never, no matter what
yabaka  to go, to leave
yabuulka  to send
yadam kuruu  ring finger
yadaruka  to be tired
yaduu  poor
yaduurka  poverty
yag  quite, just, exactly
yagaan  pink
yaht məłəkee  turtle (Kh. яст мэлхий; Bu. яахатай ‘having bone’, мэлхэй ‘turtle’)
 yast məłəkee
yalaanee üt  maggot
yalagdul  defeat
yalaltu  victory
yalaxa  to win, to defeat
yalgaxa  to separate, to distinguish
yaljarxa  to rot, to decay
yamaa  goat
yamaan sakul  beard, goatee
yamagta  always  yamakuta
yamakuta  always  yamagta
yamaru  what kind of
yamaru nəɡə  any, some
yamaru nəɡə yüm  something
yancgaax [jencgaax]  to neigh, to whinny
yandaŋ chimney
yanju appearance
yanju büree all kinds of
yanju yanju all sorts of, various
yantay writing brush (It might be a confused answer of our consultant since the Khalkha янтai is ‘ink stone, ink slab’ as Chinese 砚台[yàntai].)
yaria story, tale
yarilcuxu to converse, to dalğ to each other
yariyəka to speak, to talk эə yaryuku
yaruu nayryəga poem, poetry
yaruu tanasag noble, lofty, elegant, elevated
yaryuku to speak, to talk эə yariyəka
yast mələkee turtle эə yaht mələkee
yastan ethnic group
yasu bone эə jagasnee isə, ystan, etc.
yəɾə ninety эə yörü
yopooska a flattened cake (< Ru. лепёшка?)
yosloł ceremony
yoslon tömdəgləkə to celebrate
yoso jirum order, propriety
yörü ninety эə yəɾə
yuu what
yuund why, for what
yüğaðəxaa to speak ironically, to poke fun
yükləxaa to start, to begin эə ekləχə
yüm thing
yürəəsar (not) at all (negative polarity)
yürüŋkiiləgči president
yüsü nine
yüsüdügüəə sar September
yüülkə to pour, to drain, to empty
Appendix 2

Basic Conversational Expressions

1. First meeting

1. How do you do?
   ta sayn baynat gü
2. Is your herd passing summer healthy and fine?
   mal sürüğ tany targar saykan/sayxan jusaj bayna gü
3. Fine. How are you?
   sayn sayn ta sayn baynat gü
4. What is the news?
   soniŋ saykan/sayxan yuutee be
5. I am fine. My name is Tsetsegmaa.
   taybaŋ saykan bayna minyee nər cəcəgmaa
6. What is your name?
   tanyee aldar kən
7. My name is Tsetsegmaa.
   minyee/minii nər cəcəgmaa
8. Where is your home town?
   ta ali nutagee künt
9. I am a Khamnigan.
   bi kamnigan künbi
10. This is my first time coming here.
    bi and ajk udaa irbəbi
11. Where do you live?
192 A Study of the Mongol Khamnigan Spoken in Northeastern Mongolia

ta kaan amdranat
12. I live in Binder sum at the moment.
odoo bindərt suuj baynabi
13. What kind of work are you doing?
ta yamar mərgəjilteet
bi surgulid bagšalnabi
15. What kind of work are you doing?
ta yuu kiidəgт/xiidəgт
16. I breed horses.
bi aduuцinbi
17. How many people are there all together in your family?
tanayx am bül kədiüлəət
18. There is my father and mother. There is my wife. Then there is my daughter and son.
aba ijii экəнər тагəд okin kübüün bii
19. What brings you here?
ta иnd yamar аjilaar irəəт
20. I came here to see my elder brother and younger sister.
 иnd aka okin дүү koyortoygoo/koyortoygoo uuljayaar irbəbi
21. Please get what you want and go.
jorison kərəgəэ saykan бүтəгəэ yabaaree

2. Visiting

22. How do you do?
ta sayn baynat gü
23. I am fine. How do you do?
sayn ta sayn bayna uu
24. Is your husband at home?
nükür тany gərtəэ bayna gü
25. He went out.
tər gaduur garasan
26. When will he come back?
kəjəə irkə be
27. He is coming soon.
   udaxaqüy irkə
28. Is there any business?
   aşilaar irsən gü
29. Yes. I have something to ask from your husband.
   tiiməə tanay nükürəəs lablaka yum bayna
30. Please come in!
   ta orogtii
31. Oh, yes. Restrain your dog please!
   jaa nokoygoo koriyi (literally ‘Well, let us keep down your
dog!’)
32. Take off your overcoat!
   palitoogoo taylarəgtii
33. Please take a seat!
   ta suugtii
34. Would you like to smoke?
   tamik/tamix tatagtii
35. I don’t smoke.
   bi tamix tatagči ügyyi(‘I am not a smoker.’)
36. Did you have your meal?
   ta kooloo idsənt gü
37. I had my meal.
   idsəən.¹
38. Where have you come from?
   ta kaanaas irsənt
39. I came out from Ulaanbaatar and dropped by at Murun on the
   way here.
   ulaanbaataraas mürün dayraad² irsənbi
40. Where are you going now?
   odoo kaaguur yabakat

¹) It seems that the vowel in the second syllable is prolonged for the
   purpose of emphasis.
²) Its phonetic form may be near to [taɬ'ɑːt], or [taɬ'ɑːt].
41. I am going to Khankh.
kaŋka yabakabi
42. How many people are there in your family?
  tanayk/tanayk kədüüləət/xədüüləət
43. How many grown-ups?
  kədən tomo kün baynat
44. There are two men.
  koyor/xoyor ərəgtee
45. There is one woman.
  nəgə ərəgtee
46. There are three children.
  gurban küüküdtəebi
47. How old is your biggest child?
  tomo ny kədən nasutee
48. He is eight years old.
  nayman nasutee
49. Did your husband come back?
  tanyee nükür irləə gü
50. He has not come back.
  irləəgüy bayna
51. Then is there anyone who came?
  təgbəl kən nəgən kün irləə gü
52. Nobody has come.
  kən č irləəgüy
53. Now my husband has come back!
  sayi nükür maany irləə
54. Is everybody fine? Are you all traveling well?
  sayn baycgaana üü ayan jamdaa sayn yabajiina üü
55. Fine, thank you.
  sayn sayn bayarlalaa
56. What is the news?
  soniŋ saykan/sayxan yuutee be
57. Everything is just fine.
  taybaŋ saykan bayna
58. Are you passing the summer healthy and well?
targan sayxan jusaj baynat gü
59. Fine, fine.
sayxan
60. Have you been to Khankh?
kaŋkad/xaŋkad očij üjsənt gü
61. I have been there three times.
gurban udaa očisonbi
62. How many households are there?
tär činy kədən ürkü ayltee gajar be
63. There are more than two hundred households.
koyor juu garee ürkü ayltee
64. How big is Khentii aimag?
(1) kəntee aymagee nutag dəbsgəree kəmjee kər be (‘What is
the size of the territory of the Xentii aimag?)
(2) xəntii aymagee nutag dəbsgəree kəmjee ny kər be (‘As for
the size of the territory of the Xentii aimag, how much is
it?)
65. It is eighty thousand three hundred square kilometers.
nayan myaŋga gurban juu kabtgay dürbüljin kəlimiitər talbay
gajartee
66. In which year, was Khentii aimag established?
kəntee aymag kədiid bayguulagdasan be
67. It was established in 1942.
myaŋga yüsün juun dùčin koyor ond bayguulagdasan
68. Where is the aimag’s center?
(1) aymagiin tüb xaan baydag baygči be
(2) aymagiin tüb xaan baygči be
69. It is in Öndörkhaan.
(1) ündürxaand bayka bii
(2) ündürxaand bii
70. How many Khamnigan people are there in Kentii aimag?
odoo kəntee aymagt kamnigan kən kər olon bayna
71. About one thousand.
myaŋga orčim kən bii
72. The meal is cooked.
(1) kool bolčikoloo (‘The meal has completely become.’)
(2) kool/xool boljiino (‘The meal is becoming.’)
73. Bring it here please!
    naaši ny abaad irəgtii
74. Please have a meal!
    jaa barıgtii
75. Oh, thank you!
    jaa bayarlababii
76. The water is boiling.
    us bucaljiina
77. Please have tea!
    cay uugaarəgtii
78. Give me some more tea please!
    cay nəmaʃ үгəərəgtii
79. I am leaving first.
    bi ækłæd yabajiiigtbi
80. When are you coming again?
    dakiad xəʃə irkət
81. I will come tomorrow.
    margaaʃi dakiad irkəbi
82. I have caused you too much trouble.
    tand ix tübüg čiərdəl bolbobi
83. Thank you!
    bayarlalaa
84. See you again!
    bayartee

3. Hunting

85. Let us go hunting!
    anguućlayi
86. Let’s do that!
    təygyi
87. Let us go on horseback!
Appendix 2: Basic Conversational Expressions  197

morior yabaxamana gü
88. Prepare the horses!
morio bəlsəqtii
89. We can not go today.
münəəsər yabaj čadaxagüybid
90. Why can you not go?
yagaad yabaj čadaxagüyt
91. I have no horse.
mori bayxagüy
92. You may go on my horse!
minyee/minii morior yabaj bolxo l doo
93. Are you ready?
bəltgələə xangaat gü
94. Where is a good place to go hunting?
aba kiixə ayitaykan gajar kaan bayna
95. Where is a good place to go hunting?
kaa kaanuur 3) and yabbal dəər
96. I know.
bi mədəxəbi
97. Follow me!
minyee araas yabaarəqtii
98. Are there wild pigs?
tənd jərləg gakay bii gü
99. A lot.
maši ik bayka oo
100. Are there tigers?
bara bayxa gü
101. There are no tigers at all these days.
(1) süüleen üyd ogt bayxagüy
(2) süülee üyd ogt bayxagüy
102. Then what kind of animals are there?
tiigbəl yamar yamar jərləg amitan baygči
103. There are wild pigs, wolves, roe deers, bears, and other

3) More expected form is /kaaguur/ ‘toward where’.
animals.
(1) jərləg gaxay čon boro gürəəs baabgay ɡəkə mətiin amitad bayxa baa (‘There are wild pigs, wolves, roe deers, bears, and other animals.’)
(2) jərləg gaxay baabgay gürəəs čon ɡəkə mətiin amitad bayxa (‘There are wild pigs, bears, roe deers, wolves, and other animals.’)

104. Let us go faster!
  jaa kurdan/xurdan yabayəgtii

105. Wait a moment!
  jaaxan külyəəgtii

106. There is a roe deer.
  təər tənd boro gürəəs bayna

107. I will go this way.
  bi iišee yabəgtbi

108. You wait at the edge of that stream.
  tər golee ərəg dəər külyəəgərəgtii

109. I see.
  jaa tiigyi (‘Ok., lets do that way.’)

110. Oh, I hit it!
  xəəg onočixloo

111. What did you hit?
  yuu barisant

112. It’s a roe deer!
  boro gürəəs

113. Here are the bear’s footprints.
  ənd baabgayn mür bayna

114. These two are yesterday’s footprints.
  üčügdəree koyor mür bayna (‘There are yesterday’s two footprints.’)

115. Where did the bear go?
  baabgay xayšaa yabasan naa be

4) Its phonetic transcription may be nearer to [pa:vwəe ɣae ça: jawəwǝn na:we]. The [na:] part is inexplainable within my knowledge.
116. Oh, it seems it went far.
kolo yabasan šiğ bayna
117. There are wolves in the peak of that mountain.
təər tər uulee origild čono bayna
118. Let us tie the horses and go by foot!
moriyee uyij tabičikaad yabagan yabasuy
119. I will go alone.
bi gancaaaraa yabagtbi
120. Watch out!
bolgaamjtee yabaarəgtii
121. There are pheasants.
gurguultee bayna
122. I will shoot.
bi buudagtbi
123. Go and see please!
očijü üjügt
124. Did you hit it?
onoboči gü
125. I hit it!
onosoon onoson
126. Which part did you hit?
ali xəsəgii ny onoboči
127. Which part did you aim at?
ali xəsəgiig oniloboči
128. I shot at the head.
tolgoyd ny onosonbi
129. I will shoot next time.
daraa ny bi buudagtbi
130. It became dark. Let us sleep in the forest.
(1) xaraŋkuy bolloo oyd untayəgtii
(2) xaraŋkuy bolbo oyd untayəgtii
4. Taking a rest

131. We are tired a little bit.
    jaaxan yadaraj baynabid
132. Where shall we rest?
    kaan/xaan amarakabid
133. Let us rest here!
    ənd amarayi
134. Erect the tent!
    maykan bariaryəgtii
135. Take off the saddle!
    morineegoo ərnəl abaryəgtii
136. Where is the water?
    us kaana/xaana bayna
137. It is over there.
    təər tənd bayna
138. Let the horses get watered.
    moridoo uslayəgtii
139. Put the horses in the fetters!
    moridoo čüdürləryəgtii
140. Watch the horses!
    moridoo xaraaregtii
141. Bring the grass!
    ubs abčiraaregtii
142. Let us make a fire and get smoke!
    gal asaagaad utaa tabiyəgtii
143. Light the lamp please!
    əŋ bariyəgtii
144. I am sleepy.
    noyr kürjiinə
145. I am going to sleep.
    untayəgtii
146. You go to sleep first!
    ta əkəlʃ/əxəlʃ amaarəgtii
147. Ok, I will do so.
Appendix 2: Basic Conversational Expressions

5. Rising in the morning and Departure

148. You sleep here!
   jaa təygyi

149. Day has broken!
   day has broken!
   gegee orloo

150. Would you get up!
   Would you get up!
   bosooree

151. Did you wake up already?
   Did you wake up already?
   ali xədiin bosoot gü

152. Did you sleep well last night?
   Did you sleep well last night?
   üŋgürən şün ta saykan/sayxan noyrsoobu uu⁵)

153. I slept well.
   I slept well.
   saykan amarlaa

154. Is there water in the washbasin?
   Is there water in the washbasin?
   tümpünd us bayna gü

155. Bring the towel and soap!
   Bring the towel and soap!
   saban alčuur abaad ir

156. Let us wash our faces!
   Let us wash our faces!
   garaa nüürə uygaayi

157. Rinse your mouth please!
   Rinse your mouth please!
   amaa jaylarəgtii

158. Did the horses eat grass?
   Did the horses eat grass?
   morid übs idbə gü

159. Yes, they ate well.
   Yes, they ate well.
   tiiməə sayn idjēe

160. Bring the horses!
   Bring the horses!
   morid abaad irəgtii

161. Let us go driving the horses!
   Let us go driving the horses!
   moridoob tuuqaad yabayi

      ⁵) It is Khalkha form. Expected form is /gü/.
162. Let us go fast!
   türgün yabayəgtii
163. Where does this road go?
   ənə jam kaan kürkə/xürkə be
164. This is the road to Khatgal.
   katgalaruu yabaka/yabaxa jam
165. Is there a road which goes in that direction?
   tiišee yabaxa jam baygaa gü
166. That place is muddy.
   tənd şabar balčigtee
167. It is hard to go.
   yabaxad kəjüü
168. Is this road good to go?
   ənə jam sayn gü
169. This is a shortcut.
   ənə dü tüj jam
170. What is the name of the mountain?
   tər yamar nætte uul
171. That is Khentii Khan mountain.
   tər kəntii/xəntii xan bayna

6. Weather

172. How is the weather?
   cag agaar yamar bayna
173. It is fine.
   saykan bayna
174. How is it outside?
   gadaa yamar bayna
175. It is cloudy.
   üültee bayna
176. It is clear.
   cəlməq bayna
177. The sky has become clear.
Appendix 2: Basic Conversational Expressions

178. It rained all night long.
   boroo šünjingəə oroo
179. The rain stopped.
   boroo jogsloo
180. Let us go fast!
   türğün yabayəgtii
181. It is snowing.
   cas orojiino
182. The weather is cold.
   təŋər küytəŋ bayna
183. I am getting cold.
   bi daaraʃiinabi
184. From where is the wind blowing today?
   münəədür kaanaas salkiljiina
185. It is a northerly wind.
   koynoos/xoynoos salkiljiina

7. Food and drink

186. Did you eat your meal?
   xooloo îdəət gü
187. I have not eaten yet.
   îdəəgüy
188. I am starving very much.
   gədəs ülasjiinə
189. Let us cook!
   kooloo/xooloo kiįəgtii
190. Let us start a fire here.
   ənd galaa asaayi
191. Let us cook rice in the kettle.
   togoond budaa kiįəgtii
192. What kind of meal do you eat in the daytime?
   üdürt juu îdəəgü
193. We eat rice.
    cagaan budaa idaγčibid
194. We eat bread.
    (1) talx idaγčibid
    (2) klyeem/kleem idaγčibid
195. Please sit down!
    suucgaagaarəgtii
196. Ok. Let us sit down together.
    jaa suucgaayi
197. What kind of drink do you have?
    yamar arikì bayna
198. There is vodka.
    cagaan arikì bayna
199. How much is there?
    kəčineen bayna
200. There are two bottles.
    kojor šil bayna
201. Have some more.
    dakiad uugaarəgtii
202. I am drunk.
    bi sogtjiino
203. I won't drink.
    (1) bi uuxagüyi
    (2) bi uuxagüy ny
204. I am full.
    bür cadbabi

8. Division of the games
205. Hunters came back.
    aŋčid irəǝ
206. What kind of game did you bring?
    juu abčirjiina
207. They brought roe deer and deer.
boro gürəs bolon buga bayna
208. Did you divide the meat?
    maxaa xubaagaat gü
209. No. We have not divided yet.
    kubaagaagüybid/xubaagaagüybid
210. Which part do you want?
    ta juu abxasant
211. Give me some venison.
    bugay makanaasaa nadad jaaxan ügünt gü
212. Which part of the meat would you like to have?
    ali xəsəgii ny abkat
213. Give me front legs!
    kaagii ny ügügtii
214. Is there any meat left?
    maxa üldəə gü
215. No, there is no meat left.
    bayxagüy bayna
216. Please roast this meat well and give it to me!
    (1) ənə maxayg nadad sayn šarj ügügtii
    (2) ənə maxaygaa nadad sayn šarj ügügtii

9. Shopping

217. Come in!
    tabtee morilogtii
218. What do you want?
    juu xayna či (literally ‘What kind of thing are you searching for?’)
219. I will buy a hat and an over coat.
    malgay paltogoo abaxa gəjiinəbi
220. Let me take a look at that black fur hat!
    tər xar üstee malgayg üjüyi
221. Here you are!
    maagtii
222. Please try on it!
   ümsəød üjü dəə

223. It is a little bit small.
   jaakan baga bayna

224. Do you not have one a little bit bigger?
   (1) üünəəs tom bayxa gü
   (2) üünəəs tomo bayxagüy gü

225. How is this?
   ənə yamar bayna

226. Yes it is. It is well fitting.
   tiim bayna sayxan taarağiina

227. What kind of over coats do you have?
   yamarkuu paltoonuud bayna

228. Try on this red one!
   ənə ulaan paltoog ümsəød üjəəryəgtii

229. I do not like the color.
   üŋgü ny sətɡəld taalagdanagüy

230. Let me see that blue overcoat.
   tər kükə paltoog üjüyi

231. Here it is.
   jaa ənə bayna

232. How is it?
   yamaragči bayna

233. It fits me very well.
   namad jokijiino

234. I like it very much.
   sətɡəld miny nyəəcajiina

235. How much is it?
   ünü ny kədii/xədii

236. It is forty five thousand tugrugs.
   düčin taban myaŋgan colkoob

237. It is a little bit expensive.
   (1) jaaxan ünütee bayna
   (2) jaaxan üntee bayna

238. Do you not have a cheaper one?
Appendix 2: Basic Conversational Expressions 207

area kimdaxaŋ yum bayxagüy gü
239. How about this brown overcoat then?
tiigungə kürün/kürün paltoo yamaragći ee
240. This one is cheaper than that one.
əna činy tərənəs aray kyamð yum bayna
241. Oh, it is fine.
əna tany dağigüy yum bayna
242. I will take this black fur hat and this brown overcoat.
(1) əna kara malgayg kürün paltootee kamtad ny abagtbı
(2) əna kara malgayg kürün paltootee kamtad ny abayagtbı
243. How much is it altogether?
bügüd ünû ny kodii be
244. The hat is six thousand tugrugs and the overcoat is thirty thousand tugrugs.
malgay jurgaan myanğıan colkoob paltoo guçin myanğıan colkoob
245. All together, thirty six thousand tugrugs.
bügüd guçin jurgaan myanğıan colkoob boljiino
246. Here, take the money!
jaamagtı
247. Thank you!
jaabayarlalaa
248. Please come again!
daxiad irərəgtı

10. Apology

249. I am a little late.
(1) bi jaaxan xoşimdoobi
(2) bi jaaxan xoşimdobobi
250. Sorry for that!
uučlaaragtı
251. You have not started eating yet because of me.
namaas bolood odoo xürtël xool idøj časaqüy baygaa bij či
252. It does not matter.
   (1) jügəər jügəər
   (2) dağüy dağüy

11. Medical treatment

253. How are you doctor?
   əmčee ta sayn baynat gü
254. What is wrong with you?
   xaan tany əbgüyrkəjiinə (literally ‘Where of your body is not comfortable?’)
255. I feel uncomfortable.
   bii miny jaaxan əbgüyrkəjiinə (literally ‘My body is not comfortable a little bit.’)
256. Where is aching?
   kaan/xaan činy übdüjiinə
257. I have a headache.
   tolgoy miny übüsəjiinə (literally ‘My head is aching.’)
258. I feel like I caught a cold.
   kaniad xürsan šig bayna
259. I am sweating.
   (1) külürj baynabi
   (2) külürjiinə
260. I have a stomachache
   gədəs miny übüsəjiinə (literally ‘My stomach is aching.’)
261. I have diarrhea.
   gədəs miny güylgəjiinə
262. When did it start?
   xaḍii tiğə (‘How long has it been in that way?’)
263. Three days ago.
   (1) gurab xonojiinobi (‘I am passing three days and nights.’)
   (2) gurab xonojiino (‘(I am) passing three days and nights.’)
264. Please take off your outer garment!
   gaduur xubtasaa tayləgtii
265. Raise your inner garment!
   dotooj ərgügtii
266. Raise your arms please!
   garaa ərgügtii
267. Stretch your arms!
   garaa sunqagtii
268. Does it ache here?
   ənd tany əbdnə gü (literally ‘Is here of yours aching?’)
269. It does not ache.
   əbdnəgüy
270. How is your urine?
   ʃeex tany yamar bayna
271. Is it a lot or a little?
   ik/ix bayna gü əsbəl baga bayna gü
272. How is your appetite?
   koolnee/xoolnee tany duršil yamar
273. I have no appetite.
   (1) kool idəx duram ügüy
   (2) xool idəx duram ügüy
274. Put on your clothes please!
   kubtasaa ümsügtii
275. Let me feel your pulse.
   (1) cusnee san coxiltiig üjyəgtbi
   (2) sudasnee tan coxiltiig üjyəgtbi
276. What disease is this?
   yamar kii übüčin (literally ‘What disease do I have?’)
277. It’s a cold.
   kanyaad bayna
278. There is nothing to worry about.
   ʃətkəl/sətgil büü jobayi (literally ‘Let us do not worry!’)
279. Take this medicine three times a day.
   əna əmiig üdürt gurban udaa uugtii
280. I see.
   jaa mədəbəbi
281. Goodbye!
210 A Study of the Mongol Khamnigan Spoken in Northeastern Mongolia

bayartee

12. Season

282. We have a cold wind.
   küytən salkitee bayna
283. It was warm just several days ago.
   kədən konogee ümün dulaakan baysan
284. The time flows very fast!
   cag ik kurdan üngürjiina əə
285. The day has become shorter recently.
   oyrdoon üdür bognisjiino
286. Will this winter be as cold as the last winter?
   ənə übül üngürsən übül şig küytən baya bolbo gü
287. It also seems that it will snow a lot.
   cas bas ix orox oo gü
288. All of us should prepare well for the winter.
   bultaraa übülee bəltgəl sayn kiikə kərəgtee
289. We should look here and there around the house to see if
   there is anywhere the draft may come in.
   ənd tand salki küügüjiixə gajar baya gü sayn karaarəgtii
290. Put on warm clothes please.
   dulaaxan kubsłaarəgtii
291. It is easy to catch a cold.
   amarxan kaniad xürkət
292. Be careful with your health!
   ərüül məndəə aŋkaarəgtii

13. Happy event

293. You must be happy about something?
   tand bayartee üyl yabadal bolbo gü
294. Yes, my younger brother is coming back.
295. Oh, you seem so delighted about that.
   tiigəə l tiim bayar kəərtəe baysan baynat
296. All of the family members must be happy.
   gəreeexən tany bügüd bayartee bayna biə əə
297. Yes, the whole family is waiting for him.
   tiiməə düüg bügüd l küleejiənə
298. When younger brother went, everybody was sad.
   düüg yabaxad bügüd l goniglojiison
299. Especially our mother was very sad.
   yalaŋguyya ijii many ik gonigloson
300. It is truly great for us to meet again.
    dakiad uuljasanda ik/ix l bayartee baynabid
301. We will have a party at home.
    gərtəe bayar kiikəm⁶) ny
302. Have a nice talk with your younger brother.
    düüteegəə sayxan yaricgaagaarəgtiii

14. Farewell

303. It is not yet the time for the departure of the train.
    qalt tərəg küdüləxə cag aray boloogiy bij dəə
304. Yes. There are forty minutes left.
    tiiməə düçin minuut kərətee üldəəd bayna
305. I feel sorry that we are departing so soon like this.
    iigəəd yabaxa bolosond karamsajiiina
306. I feel sorry too.
    bi č bas karamsaltee baynabidi
307. Thank you for taking care of me kindly and warmly during the past days.

⁶) The word final /-m/ in #kiikəm# is unexpainable.
A Study of the Mongol Khamnigan Spoken in Northeastern Mongolia

(1) üŋgürsən kugasaand ᠠᠯᠭᠡᠰᠦᠭ dulaakan kandasand bayarlalaa
(2) üŋgürsən kugacaand ᠠᠯᠭᠡᠰᠦᠭ dulaaxan karicasand bayarlalaa

308. I feel sorry because I was not able to take care of you well.
(1) taniig ilüü saynaar daylč sadaagüydəə gəmiig xiisən șig baynabi
(2) taniig ilüü saynaar daylaa čadaagüydəə gəmiig xiisən șig baynabi

309. Please talk to me!
   jaabal yariaarəgtii

310. Of course. There is no reason not to do so.
   təgəlgüy ʤə

311. I will miss you a lot.
   təniğ $i$ sanaxa bayk i

312. I will also miss this place.
   (1) bi bas ən gajariig sanax bayk i
   (2) bi ən gajariig ik sanax bayk i (‘I will miss this place very much.’)

313. Have a nice trip!
   sayn yabaarəgtii

314. Live well!
   sayn suuj baygaaryəgtii

15. Needlework

315. Who made these clothes?
   ənə kubtasiig/xubtasiig kən oyison

316. My grandmother made them.
   minyee əmbəə oyison

317. What a beautifully made piece of clothing it is!
   ik uran yum bayna

318. Our grandmother is very excellent at needle work.
   manay əmbəə üylənd maşi uran ny ʤə
319. Then did you learn needle work from your grandmother?
   tiigbaal ta əmbəqəəsəə üył utas sursant gü

320. I learn from my grandmother when I have time.
   jab jaygaaraa sursanbi

321. But I am not very good at it.
   əgbəi sayn xiij čadaqči ügüy

322. What are you sewing recently?
   oyrdaa7) yuu oyijiinot

323. I am sewing a small pouch.
   jijikən kabtaga oyijiinobi

16. Taste for tea

324. Would you like to have something to drink?
   uuxa yüm ügügtbi (‘Let me give you something to drink.’)

325. Oh, thank you!
   jaa bayarlalaa

326. What would you like to drink?
   yamar undaa uuxat

327. I want to have some tea.
   bi cay uusuy[ə:suj]

328. How do you like it?
   bi yaaj xiixəbi

329. Would you like to have strong tea?
   ütgün kiixə üü8)

330. Make it weak for me.
   šiŋəxən kiij ügügtii

331. Would you like to have it with milk?
   süü xiixəbi gü

332. Mix a little bit of cow milk for me.
   süü baga kiigtii/xiigtii

7) More expected form is #oyrdoo#.
8) It is more like a Khalkha form.
333. How about adding some sugar?
   saaxar yaakat/yaaxat
334. No sugar thanks!
   saaxar büü kii
335. Here you are!
   jaa maagtii
336. ‘Thank you!’
   bayarlababi

17. Hobby

337. What do you like to do when you have time?
   čüuləə cagaaraa yuu xiidaqt
338. I climb mountains.
   uuland garagčibi
339. What do you like to do?
   ta yuu xiidaqt
340. I like to sing.
   (1) bi duu duulaxa durteebi
   (2) bi duulaxa durteebi
341. What kind of songs do you like?
   yamar duund durteeet
342. I like the Altayn Magtaal.
   altayn magtaald/magtuuld durtee l bi dəə
343. I like that song too.
   bi č bas tər duund durtee aqčibi (‘I am also the one who likes that song.’)
344. It has a really delightful melody.
   üňükəə cəqəlog ayyilguu şüü
345. Shall we sing together?
   kamtdaa/xamtdaa duulaxamana gü
Appendix 3

Data for Grammatical Analysis

1. Nominals and case marking

1.1 Personal pronouns

(1) First person plural exclusive/inclusive
1. We will go to the river. You go to the mountain.
   (1) bidnuus goluruu yabana karin tanuus uuluruu yabaarəgtii
   (2) bid goluruu yabana xarin tanuus uuluruu yabaarəgtii
2. Let us go to the forest together.
   bid bügüdəərəə xamtdaa oyruu yabyəgtii

(2) Personal pronoun, singular
3. He/She left with me.
   tər namatee xamt yabasan
4. I gave him/her this book.
   bi tüünd ŋənomiig ügüsənbi
5. He/She gave this book to me.
   tər nadad ŋənomiig ügüsən
6. I like you.
   (1) bii čamad xayrteebi
   (2) či namad talaagdağiinači
7. You like him more.
či tüünd ilüü sayńči
8. He/She left with you.
   tər čamtee kamt/xamt yabasan

(3) Personal pronoun, plural
9. They left with us.
   təd bidəntee xamt yabasan
10. We gave this book to them.
    bid tədənd ənə nomiig ügüsən
11. They gave this book to us.
    təd bidənd ənə nomiig ügüsən
12. We welcome you warmly.
    bid tanariiq kaluunaar ugtaxabid
13. You are better with them.
    tanar tədəntee ilüü dotont
14. They left with you.
    təd tanartee xamt yabasan

(4) Declension of the personal pronoun
    minyee nom
16. Do not beat me!
    namayg bitgii jodooryəgtii
17. Write a letter to me.
    namad jakia bičəaree
18. He got great help from me.
    (1) tər namaas ik tuslamji absan
    (2) tər nadaar ik tusluulsan (‘He/She let me help him/her very much.’)
19. By me. (Singular, instrumental)
    namaar
20. Let you and me go together.
    koyuulaa/xoyuulaa kamt yabyəgtii
21. Send me a postcard.
    namad il jakidal yabuulaaree
22. Your book. (Singular) 
činyee/činee nomo
23. I will not beat you. 
bi čamaygaa jodoxogüybi
24. I will write a letter to you. 
bi čamad jakia bičikəbi/bičixəbi
25. I got a great help from you. (Singular) 
bi čamaas ik tuslamji absanbi
26. By you. (Singular, instrumental) 
čamaar
27. I will go with you. 
bi čamtee xamt yabaxabi
28. I will send a postcard to you. 
bi čamuruu il jakidal yabuulkabi
29. His/Her book. 
tüünee nom
30. Do not beat him/her. 
tərəniig bitgii jodooree
31. Write a letter to him. 
tərənd jakia bičiəree
32. I got great help from him. 
bi tərənəəs ik tuslamji absanbi
33. By him/her. (Instrumental) 
tərənəər
34. I will go with him/her. 
bi tərəntee xamt yabaxabi
35. Send him/her a postcard. 
tərənd il jakidal yabuulaaree
(1) bidnii nom  
(2) manaree nom
37. Do not beat us. 
bidniig bitgii jodooree
38. Write a letter to us. 
manart jaxia bičiəryəgtii
39. He got great help from us.
   ṭər  bidənəəs ix tuslamji absan

40. By us. (Instrumental)
   manuusaar

41. Let us go with you.
   manuustee xamt yabaaree

42. Send us a postcard.
   bidənuruu il jakidal yabuulaarəgtii

43. Your book. (Plural)
   tanaree nom

44. We will not beat you.
   manuus tanariig jodoxogüybid

45. We will write a letter to you.
   manuus tanart jakia bičikəbid

46. We got great help from you. (Plural)
   manuus tanaraas ik tuslamji absanbid

47. By you. (Plural, instrumental)
   tanaraar[tʰaːnɔrɔːr]

48. We will go with you. (Plural)
   manuus tanartee xamt yabaxabid

49. We will send you a postcard. (Plural)
   manuus tanarluu il jakidal yabuulkabid

50. His/Her book
   tərəneeq nom

51. Do not beat them.
   tədədiig bitgii jodooryəgtii

52. Send them a letter.
   tədəd jakia yabuulaaryəgtii/yabuulaaregtii

53. We got great help from them.
   (1) manuus tədədəəs ix tuslamji absanbid
   (2) tədəd bidand ik tuslasan (literally ‘They helped us a lot.’)

54. By them. (Instrumental)
   tədənəər

55. We will go with them.
   manuus tədtee xamt yabaxabid
56. Send them a postcard.
   тəдəд il jakidal/jaxidal yabuulaaryəgtii

(5) The genitive case of the personal pronouns
57. My mother is a teacher.
   mini ijii bagš
58. Our mother is a teacher.
   (1) manaree ijii bagš
   (2) manuusee ijii bagš
59. Your mother is a teacher. (Singular)
   činii ijii bagš
60. Your mother is a teacher. (Plural)
   tanuusee ijii bagš
61. His mother is a teacher.
   tərənee ijii bagš
62. Her mother is a teacher.
   tərənee ijii bagš
63. Their mother is a teacher.
   tədədee ijii bagš

1.2 Number

1.2.1 Singular and plural forms of the noun

(1) General usage
64. a Chinese
   (1) šaŋkay xün
   (2) siŋkay kün
65. Chinese (Plural)
   (1) šaŋkay kümüüs
   (2) saŋkayčuud
66. A Russian (male)
   oros kün
67. A Russian (female)
oros kün

68. Russians 
   (1) oros künüüd
   (2) orosuuud

69. a Mongol
   mongol kün

70. Mongols
   (1) mongol künüüd
   (2) mongolonuud

71. A Khamnigan
   kamnigaŋ kün

72. Khamnigans
   (1) kamnigaŋuud
   (2) kamnigaŋ künüüd

73. a man and a woman
   nəgə ərəgtee ba nəgə əməgtee

74. men and women
   ərəgteečüüd ba əməgteečüüd

75. a pupil and a teacher
   suragči ba bagš

76. pupils and teachers
   suragčid ba bagšnar

77. a cattle and a horse
   ükür ba mori

78. cattle and horses
   ükürüüd ba moriduuud

79. a flower and a bird
   cəcəg ba šibuu

80. flowers and birds
   cəcəgnüüd ba šibuunuud

(2) Quantifier and plural marking

81. two horses
   koyor/xoyor mori

82. many countries
olon ulad
83. Our grandfather is one hundred years old.
    manuusee kügšee juun nasutee

1.3 Case and case marking

1.3.1 Nominative

(1) General usages
84. I am an honest person.
    bi šudraga künbi
85. The horse runs.
    mori dabkixa
86. Two people came
    xoyor kün irbə

1.3.2 Genitive

(1) General usage
87. The mother of a friend of mine came.
    andiin miny ijii irbə
88. My teacher’s house is at the center of the village.
    bagšiin miny gor tosgonee tübd baygči

(2) Case marking for the subject of the embedded sentence
89. It is a piece of clothing that my mother made.
    ənə minyee ijii oyison kubcas
90. This is a book that I bought.
    ənə minyee absan nom

(3) Expressions in genitive case
91. Horse’s head
    morinee tolgoy
92. Pork
gakayn myəka (literally ‘pig’s meat’)

93. Dentist
südnee domči (‘teeth’s doctor’)

94. World champion
dələkeen abaraga (‘World’s champion’)

95. Clock’s hand, watch’s hand
cagee jüü

96. College of teachers
bagšee ṭəəd surguuli

97. Khentii aimag
kəntii/kəntee aymag

98. Breakfast
ügüilaaneen cay[tsʰ:eː] (‘morning’s tea’)

99. Book price
nomee ünə (‘book’s price’)

100. Train time table
galt tərganeen cagee kubaari[kʰoʊɛɾj] (train’s time’s allotment’)

101. Eyeglasses
nūdnee šil (‘eye’s glasses’)

102. Ulaanbaatar city
ulaanbaatar koto/xoto

103. Happy birthday to you!
türsən üdüree bayar kürgii

1.3.3 Accusative

(1) General usages
104. I bought rice from the market.
   bi jəəlyəəs caa qaan budaa abbabi

105. Mother is waiting for us.
   ijii manariig külyeejiinə

(2) Indefinite object
106. Elder brother found money on the street.
   akay jam dəərəəs colkoob olloo
107. Children are reading their books at home.
   küügüüd gərtээ nomoo unšiijiina[ənɕitɕiin/ənɕitɕiin]

1.3.4 Instrumental

108. We use spoons for eating.
   bid xalbagaaг idəгčibid (literally ‘We are those who eat with a spoon.’)
109. My father made a table with wood.
   aba many modoor nomee širee kiibэ
110. We came by horse.
   bid morioor irsэнbid
111. It snows heavily in Khentii in winter.
   kəntee üбüldээ cas iktee
112. Mongolia is famous for Gobi.
   moŋgol oron gobioor aldartee

1.3.5 Comitative

113. I went to the forest with my mother.
   bi ijiiteegəə kamт/xamt oyruu yabababi
114. I read a book with a friend of mine.
   bi andateegaa kamт nom unшibabi

1.3.6 Dative

115. My father bought me shoes.
   abam namad qutal abč üгубэ
116. I am telling them an old story.
   bi təдəд үλігэр yarixabi[ jerɪ̞xawɪ]

1.3.7 Locative

(1) Spatial
117. I am the tallest in my village.
A Study of the Mongol Khamnigan Spoken in Northeastern Mongolia

118. He/She is living in Beijing.
   tər bəɔjïnd amdradag

119. My child is at school now.
   küüküd odoo surguuli dəərə baygaa

(2) Temporal
120. He/She was sleeping when I came.
   minyee irkəd tər untajiiba

121. Thank you for your help during my stay in Seoul.
   (1) namaygaa səəbüld[sə:βult] baykad miny tusalsand činy bayarlababi
   (2) səəbüld[sə:βult] bayxad miny namad tuslasand činy bayarlababi

1.3.8 Directional

(1) General usages
122. This car is going to our village.
   ənə mašiin manay tosgonuruu yabaxa

123. Do you go to the river or sea to catch fishes?
   jagas barikuur/barixaar goluruu yabaxama[jabχämä]¹) gü
dalayruu yabaxama[jaβχämä] gü

(2) Indefinite direction
124. The dog fled outside
   noxoy gadagši jutaab[tsotʰaːw]²)

125. My wife went somewhere.
   (1) əkənər xaa/kaa nəɡə tiişee yабasан
   (2) əkənəр kayšaa/xayšaa či yüm yabačiksan
   (3) Path: Passing point when the action is done

¹) The function of the segment /-ma-/ in yabaxama[jaβχämä]# is unclear.
²) More expected phonetic form is nearer to [tsaktaχa] as the consultant answered [tsaktaχa] for the word 'to flee, to escape'.
126. I came back by this road.
   bi ənə jamaar bucaj irbəbi

127. I went to the river along the snow covered road and came back.
    bi castee jamaar gol kürtər yabaad bucaj irbəbi

128. I crossed the deep water which reached at my waist.
    (1) bi bəlxüüs Kürsən us gatləj irəəbi
    (2) bi bəlxüüs Kürsən us gatləj irbəbi

1.3.9 Elative

(1) Direction from where the action originated
129. Horses came back from the forest.
    morid oygoos bucaj irbə

130. He fell from the horse.
    tər morinoosoo unaba

131. It takes three hours from the lake to the forest.
    nuuraas oy kürtər qurban cag yabaxa

1.3.10 Ablative

(1) Starting point, source of the action
132. I came from Ulaanbaatar.
    (1) bi ulaanbaataraaas irbə
    (2) bi ulaanbaataraaas irbəbi

133. Gansukh came back from Ulaanbaatar.
    gansüx ulaanbaataraaas bucaj irbə

(2) Cause
134. His father died of an illness.
    tərənee aba übüчинər nas baraba

135. I cried because I was happy.

3) It seems that the difference between the elative and the ablative is not discernable in Khamnigan, at least at the morphological level.

4) Cause is not marked by the ablative case in Khamnigan.
(3) Comparison
136. Many people came today.
   (1) мүнээдүүр күмүүс ик ирбэ
   (2) üнээдүүр күмүүс ик ирбэ
137. More people came yesterday than today.
   üчүүгүүдүүр üнээдүүрөөс ик күн ирбэ
138. It seems that the most people will come tomorrow.
   мажааши күмүүс хамгай ик ир баяк аа
139. This lake is bigger than that lake.
   өңө нүүр тор нүүрөөс илүү үрүүн
140. Elder brother is three years older than younger brother.
    акай нү дүүгөөө гурба насаар 6) ака
141. Make greater efforts!
    илүү икөөр чарамайгаареэ

1.4 Personal possessive and reflexive marking

(1) Personal possessive marking
142. My horse is at home.
    мүнзы мөр сөрөө баяна
143. Your horse runs fast.
    чингий мөр курдан баяна
144. I am a better pupil than his elder brother.
    би төрөөөс акаас 7) илүү сөний сургучи
145. This child’s eyes are very similar to its mother’s eyes.
    өңө күүгүүнүү нүд ижигөөө адилкөөнүүү икүү
146. Our native land is very beautiful.
   manaree nutag maši sayxan
147. Where is your school?
   tanuusee surguuli kaan/xaan baygči
148. He loves (his own) children very much.
   tər küügüüdtəə ik xayrtee

(2) Reflexive pronoun
149. I went there for myself.
   bi æreêngææ[æ:re:ŋæ:][8]) tülæ tiišee očisonbi
150. You went there for yourself.
   či æreêngææ[æ:rö:ɡæ:] tülæ tiišee očisonći
151. He went to that place for himself.
   tər æreêngææ[æ:re:ŋæ:] tülæ tiišee očison
152. We went there for our very selves.
   manuus ærsdeengææ[æ:rsde:ŋæ:][9]) tülæ tiišee očisonbid
153. You went there for yourselves.
   tanuud ærsdeengææ[æ:rsde:ŋæ:] tülæ tiišee očisont
154. They went there for themselves.
   tədəəd ærsdeengææ[æ:rsde:ŋæ:] tülæ tiišee očison

(3) Reflexive possessive marking
155. I finished eating my meal and brushed my teeth.
   bi kooloo idæd sudæ/südæ ugaababi
156. I miss my wife.
   bi økänarææ sanaj baynabi
157. I wrote a letter to my wife.
   (1) bi øxnârtææ jakia bičibabi
   (2) bi økänarææ jakia bičibabi
158. I made my wife write a letter.
   bi økänarææææ jakia bičiüülübæbi

8) It is basically the same as the Buryat form øørûŋõø/‘one’s own’.
9) Unlike the singular form, it is a kind of mixture of Khalkha (øërûðûñõø and Buryat (øøñûðûñõø).
159. I received a letter from my wife.
   bi əkənərəəσəə jakia abbabi

160. I read a letter with my wife.
   bi əkənəртеегəə kamt jakia unśiaabi

161. I went to the market on my way home.
   (1) gərtəə bucaxa jamdaa ʒəəlyəə yabababi
   (2) bi gərtəə bucaxa jamdaa ʒəəlyəə yabababi

1.5 Postposition

162. It snowed from morning to evening.
   ügüləənəəs oroy boltol cas orobo

163. I fought for my country.
   bi əkə[ikʰ] oroneŋgəo tüləə tulaldaabi

164. He is sleeping on the lawn.
   tər jüülɡən dəər untajiina

165. I read a letter with my wife.
   bi əkənərтеегəə xamt jakia unśibabi

166. I am as happy as you.
   bi cam šig aj jargaltee baynabi (literally ‘I am happy like
   you.’)

167. I am happy because of you.
   či baygaa axad činy bi aj jargaltee baynabi

168. I go hunting everyday.
   bi üdür bükün abad yabagčibi

169. Nobody knows except me.
   namaas əər kəə č mədəkəgüy

170. Mother came after father had left.
   (1) aba yabasanee daraa ijjii irtə
   (2) aba yabasanee daraakan ijjii irtə
   (3) aba yabasan koyno[kʰəjən] ijjii irtə

171. According to the news, it snowed much in Ulaanbaatar.
   mədənəəs soŋsbol miny ulaanbaatart cas ik/ix orojee

172. I saw no one on the way back home.
Appendix 3: Data for Grammatical Analysis

173. Go before the rain starts.
   *boroo orokoos ümün yaba[jawā]*

174. Go after the rain stops.
   *boroo namasxaar yaba[jawā]*

175. We stayed at home because it rained.
   *boroo orson akad ny bid gərtəə baybabid[pejppit]*

176. Come back within three hours.
   *gurban cagee dotor bucaj ir*

177. I read a book from two o'clock to three o'clock.
   *xoyor cagaas gurban cag xürtür bi nom uŋšibabi*

178. How many hours does it take from here to Undurkhaan by car?
   *ændəəs ündürxaan kürtür maśinaar kədən cag yabagči ny*

179. Gansukh reads many books in order to go to college.
   (1) gansiiχ ik surguulid orox ɡəj ɡəj ik nom uŋšiɡči
   (2) ganstix ik surguulid orox ɡəj nom ik uŋšiɡči

180. Gansukh talks about Korea often.
   *gansük[kaŋsuk/kansuk] solongosee tuxay dandaa yariğiči*

181. Gansukh goes to school via the forest.
   *gansük oyg üngürüün surguulidaa yabagči*

182. Gansukh walked along the river.
   *gansiiχ golee daguu alkaba*

183. It is difficult to commute to Undurkhaan without a car.
   *mašiin ügüy bolkoor ündürkaan kürtər/kürtəl ajild yabxad kəjuu bayna*

184. School is considerably far from the forest.
   *surguuli oygoos nileen jaytee ağiči*

185. Gansukh knows two more languages besides Mongolian and Russian.
   *gansük oros kəl mongol kələnəəs ər koyor kəl mədəğči* ('Gansukh is someone who knows two more languages besides Mongolian and Russian. ‘)

186. According to the weather forecast, we will have heavy snow today.
   (1) cag agaaree uridčilan sərgiiləχə mədaγəər bol ünəedür
2. Grammar of the verbals (1): Conjugational suffixes

2.1 Indicative mood

2.1.1 Present tense

(1) Singular

190. I smoked.\textsuperscript{10)
\[\text{bi tamix tatababi}\]

191. You smoke
\[\text{či tamix tataqči (‘You are a smoker.’)}\]

192. He/She smokes
\[\text{tər tamix tataka}\]

(2) Plural

193. We smoke together.
\[\text{manuus kamt/xamt tamix tatababid}\]

\textsuperscript{10) Our question was prepared to induce the present tense. However, we failed to make our consultant understand what we were expecting from her.}
194. We smoke but you do not.
   bid tamix tatabči tanuus tamix tataxagüyt
   tanuud tamix tataxat
196. They smoke.
   tədəd tamix tatana

2.1.2 Past tense

(1) Singular
197. I went to school yesterday.
   bi üçügüdür surguulidaa yabasanbi
198. You went to school yesterday.
   či üçügüdür surguulidaa yabasanči
199. He/She went to school yesterday.
   tər üçügüdür surguulidaa yabasan

(2) Plural
200. We went to school together yesterday.
   manuus üçügüdür kamt surguulidaa yabasanbid
201. We read books and you drew pictures yesterday.
   bidnuus üçügüdür nom unşij tanuus üçügüdür jurag jursant
202. You went to school yesterday.
   (1) tanuus üçügüdür surguulidaa yabasant
   (2) canuus11) üçügüdür surguulidaa12) yabasant
203. They went to school yesterday.
   tədəd üçügüdür surguulidaa yabasan

(3) Various past tense marking
204. I was born in Ulaanbaatar.
   bi ulaanbaatart türsünbi
205. He/She was born in Ulaanbaatar.

11) It seems to be a simple mistake of /tanuus/.
12) It seems to be a simple mistake of /surguulidaa/.
232 A Study of the Mongol Khamnigan Spoken in Northeastern Mongolia

tər ulaanbaatart türübü
206. I came from Ulaanbaatar yesterday.
   bi üçügüdür ulaanbaataraas īrəbi
207. I lived in Ulaanbaatar ten years ago.
   (1) bi araban jilee ümün ulaanbaatart amdraỹ baysanbı
   (2) bi araban jilee ümün ulaanbaatart amdraỹiisanbı
208. It was raining yesterday.
   üçügüdür boroo orojiison
209. Rain has just stopped.
   boroo düŋji say jogsobo
210. Thank you for your help.
   tuslamji üjüülsənd bayarlababı
211. I have studied Mongolian for ten years.
   bi mongol kəl araban jil surbabi
212. I have heard a lot about you.
   tanii/tanee tukay ik sonsoobi
213. Once upon a time, there lived an old man and an old woman
    in a village.
    ərtəə urideen cagt nəgə tosgond əmbəə übügün koyor
    amdraỹiijee

2.1.3 Future tense

(1) Singular
214. I will go to school tomorrow.
    bi margaaşi surgulidaa yabaxabı
215. You will go to school tomorrow.
    či margaaşi surgulidaa yabakaçi/yabaxaçi
216. He/She will go to school tomorrow.
    tər margaaşi surgulidaa yabaxa

(2) Plural
217. Tomorrow, we will go to school together.
    manuus margaaşi surgulidaa kamt yabakabid
218. Tomorrow, we will go to school and you will stay at home.
manuus margaaši surguulidaa yabaj karin tanar gərtəə bayxat
219. You will go to school tomorrow.
tanar margaaši surguulidaa yabaxat
220. They will go to school tomorrow.
tədəəd margaaši surguulidaa yabaka

2.2 Intentional mood

221. I will go there.
   tənd bi očixobi
222. We will go there.
   tənd/tend\textsuperscript{13)} manaar očiyi

2.3 Imperative mood

(1) Typical imperative
223. Go back home now!
   odookon gərtəə oči
224. Please go back home now!
   odoo gərtəə oči
225. All of you go back home now!
   odoo bügüdəərəə gərtəə očigtii

(2) Special imperative delayed command
226. Go tomorrow or the day after tomorrow!
   margaaši č yüm gü nügəədər yabaarəgtii
227. Do visit my home another time!
   daraa manayd dakiad irəərəgtii (literally ‘Come again at my home later!’)

\textsuperscript{13)} One of those Khalkha forms that occasionally appear in the speech of our consultant.
(3) Special imperative for the third person
228. Let him go back home!
   tərəniig gərt ny yabuul
229. Let them go back home!
   təpəədiig gərt ny yabuul

(4) Special imperative for wish, hope
230. May all of your business be fulfilled!
   sanasan[sansʔ] bükün tany sətɡəltɕilan[sətʰɡəltɕiləm] bütəxə
boltugay
231. Please forgive me!
   uučlaaree
232. Cheers for our nation!
   manay ulus mandatugay ny (literally ‘Let our country rise!’)

(5) Persuading mood
233. Let us go together!
   kamt yabaxamana gü
234. Let us read a book together!
   kamt nom uŋšixamana gü

2.4 Verbal noun suffixes

(1) Nominal clause
235. I heard that you came here yesterday.
   bi üčügüdür taniig and irsəniig ny sonsoobi
236. I am very glad that you came here.
   bi taniig and irsənd tany bayarlaŋ baynabi
237. Eating too much sugar is very bad for the health.
   čikər ik idəxə ny ərüül məndəd ik muu

(2) Attributive clause
238. I heard the news that he had come back.
   tər bucaj irəə gaj sonsoobi
239. I read a book that I bought yesterday.
   bi üçügdür absan nomoo unšibabi
240. No pupil ever knows this.
   ønəniig məpəxə suragči nəgə či bayxagüy
241. I bought a book to read.
   bi unšixa nomoo abaabi
242. Textbook
   surka bičig (‘a learning book’ or ‘a book to learn’)

2.5 Connective suffixes

2.5.1 Simultaneous relation

(1) Two actions happen in parallel
243. We talked while laughing.
   (1) bid ineej yaribabid
   (2) manuuş ineej yariaabid
244. Children ran into the room.
   kütügüüd ürəəndəə güyj orobo

(2) Two clauses have different subjects
245. Mother is eating fish, on the other hand, father is eating mutton.
   ijii jagas idjiinə karin aba koninee myaka/maxa idjiinə
246. Gansukh was singing and Saraa was dancing.
   gansüx duu duulažiij saraa büjigləɓə
247. Gansukh sang. On the other hand, Saraa danced.
   gansüx duu duulaba xarin saraa büjig büjigləɓə

2.5.2 Successive connection

(1) Actions happen successively
248. I ate breakfast and went to school.
   (1) bi ügüλəneeɡə cay uugaad surguulidaa yabababi
   (2) bi ügüλəneeɡə cay uugaad surguulidaa yabababi
   üčügüdür bi nom abaad gərtəə irbəbi
250. Gansukh sung then danced.
   gansüx duulaǰiigaad büjigləbə (literally ‘Gansukh was singing then danced.’)
251. Gansukh sang. Then he danced.
   gansüx duulaba tiigəəd büjig büjigləbə

2.5.3 Conditional connection

(1) Anterior clause expresses condition or assumption
252. If you go, I will go too.
   ta yabbal tany bi či bas yabakabi
253. If you learn well, you will be praised.
   ta sayn suraasee magtağdaxat
254. If they want to come, let them come.
   təd and irəxiig xüsəəsee irəg

2.5.4 Opportunity connection

(1) Doing one action while the other is being done
255. Let us go hunting when we go mountain climbing.
   uuland abirasaneexiig abag xiiyi
256. I would like to drop by your house when I go to that village.
   tər tosgond očisoneexiig tanayxaar bas orogtbi

2.5.5 Concessive connection

257. Although Gansukh sang, Saraa did not.
   (1) gansüx duu duulasan bolobči saraa duulabagųy
   (2) gansüx duulasan bolobči saraa duulabagųy
258. Gansukh sang. But Saraa did not.
   gansüx duu duulaba saraa duulabagųy
2.5.6 Cause and effect connection

259. Tsetsegmaa being a Khamnigan sings Khamnigan songs well. 
\[ \text{cəçəgməa kamnigən kən akadaa kamnigən duu goyi duulaqči} \]
(‘Tsetsegmaa being a Khamnigan, she is a person who sings Khamnigan song well.’)

260. Tsetsegmaa is a Khamnigan. Thus she sings Khamnigan song well. 
\[ \text{cəçəgməa kamnigən kən tiiməəs kamnigən duu goyi duulaqči} \]
(‘Tsetsegmaa is a Khamnigan. Thus she is a person who sings Khamnigan song well.’)

261. Tsetsegmaa sings Khamnigan song well. The reason being because she is a Khamnigan. 
\[ \text{cəçəgməa kamnigən duu goyi duulaqčı yagaad əbəl tər kamnigən kən} \]
(‘Tsetsegmaa is a person who sings Khamnigan song well. The reason is she is a Khamnigan.’)

2.5.7 Selective connection

262. Tsetsegmaa either sings or dances at night. 
(1) \[ \text{cəçəgməa/cecegməa šuŋ boloxoor duu duulax yum üü büjig büjigləqči} \]
(‘Tsetsegmaa is a person who either sings or dances at nights.’)

(2) cecegməa šuŋ boloxoor duu duulax yum üü büjigləqči
3. Grammar of the verbals (2): Derivational suffixes

3.1 Causative voice

263. I brought water.
   bi us abčiraabi
264. My mother let me bring water.
   ijjii namaar us abčiruulaba
265. I butchered a chicken.
   bi nəgə takia gargaabi
266. I made my younger brother butcher a chicken.
   bi düügəərəə nəgə takia garguulababi
267. My younger brother went to school.
   minyee düü surguulidaa očibo
268. My mother made my younger brother go to school.
   ijjii düüg surguulid ny yabuulaba

3.2 Passive voice

269. A hunter caught a rabbit.
   ančin tuulay abalaba
270. A rabbit was caught by a hunter.
   tuulay ančind barigdaba
271. I heard a bell sound.
   bi koŋkonee duu soŋsoobi
272. From far away, a bell sound was heard.
   alasad koŋkonee duu soŋsogdaba
273. His/Her father built a new house last year.

---

14) In 267 and 268, different verbs were used for the active (oči- ‘to go’) and the causative (yabuula- ‘to let go’) voices.

15) In 269 and 270, different verbs were used for the active (abala- ‘to hunt’) and the causative (barigda- ‘to be caught’) voices.
3.3 Reflexive voice

275. My mother did the washing.
   iji ugaalaga kiibə
276. I swam in the river.
   bi golee usand orobobi
277. He hid my book.
   tər minyee[minee:] nomiig nuugaa
278. He hid himself behind the door.
   tər kaalganee caaguur/caagtur\(^\text{18}\) nuugdajini

3.4 Reciprocal voice

279. My mother and my father are talking to each other.
   iji aba xoyor yarilcajiina
280. Two people fight.
   xoyor xün üjelcajiina

3.5 Associative voice\(^\text{19}\)

281. Two of us beat that person.
   bid xoyor tərəniig jodoobid

\(^{16}\) Two different genitive markers /-iin/ and /-ee/ are employed for the same word /aba/ 'father' here.

\(^{17}\) No special devices are employed for the reflexive voice marking.

\(^{18}\) /-t-/ in /caagtur/ is unexplicable.

\(^{19}\) No associative marker is used in the verbs.
282. I built a house with my own younger brother.
   bi düüteegəə kamt  qaɔəə  bariaabi
283. I am studying at school together with my friend.
   bi surguuli daər andateegaa kamt nom ʊŋşɨgçibi (literally ‘I am one who reads books with my own friend.’)

3.6 Progressive aspect

284. It snows now.\textsuperscript{20)
   odoo cas orobo (‘It snowed now.’)
285. I am eating meal now.
   odoo bi kooloo/xooloo idjiinəbi
286. He is eating meal now.
   tər/ter odoo kooloo idjiinə

3.7 Repetitive aspect\textsuperscript{21)}

287. I am reading book.
   bi nom ʊŋşɨjiinabi
288. I am reading this book again and again.
   (1) bi enə nomiiɡ dabtan ʊŋşɨjiinabi
   (2) enə nomiiɡ bi dabtan ʊŋşɨjiinabi

3.8 Presumption

289. He is reading a book now.
   tər odoo nom ʊŋşɨjiina
290. It seems that he is reading a book.

\textsuperscript{20} It is apparent that we were not successful to make our consultant understand our intention.
\textsuperscript{21} Repetitive aspect is not marked on the verb.
291. It seems that it will rain anyway.
yamar či asee boroo oroko ny
292. Father beats his child.
aba ny kūünəə jančiba
293. It seems that father is beating his child.
aba ny kūūgəə jodoj bayigaa šig bayna

3.9 Intention

294. He came to the village to see his friend.
tər andateegaa uuljaaar tosgond irba
295. I went to a shop to buy liquor.
bi aagintad ariki abkaaar/abxaaar očoobi

4. Copula

4.1 Present

296. Tsetsegmaa is a teacher.
cəcəgmaa/səcəgmaa bol bagš

4.2 Past

297. Tsetsegmaa was a teacher.
cəcəgmaa/səcəgmaa bagš baysan
5. Usages of the auxiliary verbal constructions

5.1 'to exist/to be'

(1) As a main verb
298. I am at home.
   bi gərtə baynabi
299. He has a son.
   tərənd kübüün bi

(2) Progressive aspect: present
300. I am reading a book now.
   bi odoo nom uŋšijiiinabi
301. You are reading a book.
   či odoo nom uŋšijiiinači
302. He is reading a book now.
   tər odoo nom uŋšijiiina

(3) Progressive aspect: past
303. When father came back, I was reading a book.
   abaiìg irxəd ny nom uŋšijiiisanbi
304. When father came back, you were reading a book.
   abiig irxəd ny či nom uŋšijiiisanči
305. When father came back, his son was reading a book.
   aba ny irxəd ny kübüün ny nom uŋšijiiisan

(4) Progressive aspect: future
306. I may be reading a book at school tomorrow.
   bi margaaši surgulul dəree nom uŋšij bayxabi
307. You may be reading a book at school tomorrow.
   či margaaši[margaasi] surgulul dərəə nom uŋšij bayxači
308. Will he/she be reading a book at school tomorrow?
   tər margaaši[margaasi] surgulul dərəə nom uŋšij bayxa gü
(5) **Continuative aspect**
309. You are wearing a hat.
   či malagay ümsjiinači
310. My father already came back home.
   aba ny kədiin gərteə irəə

### 5.2 ‘to become’

(1) **As a main verb**
311. I became a student last year.
   bi nodnyoŋ oyuutan bolloobi

(2) **Permission**
312. You may smoke here.
   ənd tamix tataj bolko
313. You may leave now.
   či odoo yabajii\(^{22}\) (‘You are leaving now!’)

(3) **Immediateness**
314. It just started to rain.
   boroo sayi orojiino
315. He just left for school a moment ago.
   tər surguuliuruu düngüj sayi yababa

### 5.3 ‘to receive’

(1) **As a main verb**
316. I received a present from my father.
   bi abaaasaa bələg abaaabi

\(^{22}\) It seems to be an abridged form of /yabaj bay-/ and the whole sentence sounds more like an imperative sentence.
(2) Benefit
317. I bought new clothes for myself.
   bi æərtəə šin xubtas/xubcas abaabi
318. I adopted that child as my own.
   bi æərtəə tər kiügiiq ürgəj abaabi
319. I studied the Mongolian language for myself.
   bi æreeŋgəə tüləə mongol kal/xel sursanbi
320. I studied the Khamnigan language for myself.
   bi æreeŋgəə tüləə kamnigaŋ kal sursanbi

5.4 ‘to give’

(1) As a main verb
321. Teacher gave me a book.
    bagš namad nəɡə nom üɡəə
322. My father gave me a good present.
    aba namad goyi bələg ügübə

(2) Benefit
323. I sopke about my village to my teacher.
    bi bagš(i)daa tosgoneegoo tuxay yarij üɡəəbi
324. I read a book for my mother.
    bi ijiidəə nom uŋšij üɡəəbi
325. Mother sang a nursery rhyme to her child.
    ijii xüügündəə büübeyn duu ayilaba

5.5 ‘to see’

(1) As a main verb
326. I saw fish in the river.
    bi gold jaraaxay xarbabı
(2) Try
327. Try the new clothes on!
šīn xuhtasaa nاغa ümsaad üjəree l ȼi
328. I brought pastry. Taste!
jignəməg abaad irbəbi amsaad üjəree (literally ‘I bought and
brought pastry. Taste!’)

5.6 ‘to be able to’

329. I can read.
bi nom uŋšij čadaxabi (literally ‘I can read books.’)
330. He can read.
tər nom uŋšij čadaxa (literally ‘He can read books.’)
331. He can not read.
tər nom uŋšij čadaxagüy (literally ‘He can not read books.’)

5.7 ‘to have to do’

332. I have to leave today.
bimünə̄dür/үнə̄dür yabaxasanbi
333. You are to read through this book within three days!
(1) či gurban üdüree dotor əŋə nomiig bügüdii ny uŋšij
duusgaxači
(2) či əŋə nomiig gurban üdüree dotor bügüdii ny uŋšij
duusgaxači
6. Negative sentence, interrogative sentence, quotations

6.1 Nominal negation

334. I was a pupil.
   bi suraγči asanbi
335. I am not a pupil.
   bi suraγči bišibi
336. I was not a student at that time.
   bi тəр üyd suraγči biši baysanbi
337. He is an adult.
   (1) тəр tomo kün
   (2) тəр nasu bəjənd kürsən kün
338. He is not an adult.
   тəр tomo kün biši
339. (He/She) was not an adult yet at that time.
   тəр üyd karaakan tomo kün biši bayba

6.2 Adjectival negation

340. That child is pretty.
   тəр kūüg kəərkən yum altay dəə (‘That child is apparently pretty.’)
341. That child is not pretty.
   тəр kūüg kəərkən biš
342. That child was not pretty at that time.
   (1) тəр üyd тəр kūüg xaraaxan kəərkən biš baysan
   (2) тəр kūüg тəр üyd xaraaxan kəərkən biš baysan
6.3 Verbal negation

6.3.1 Present

(1) Simple negation
343. I do not go to school today.
   bi münəədur/ünəədur surguulidaa yabaxagüybi
344. You do not go to school today.
   či münəədur/ünəədur surguulidaa yabaxagüyči
345. He/She does not go to school today.
   tər münəədur surguulid yabaxagüy
346. He/She has no money.
   tərənd colkoob bayxagüy

(2) Negation of ability
347. I can not go to school now.
   bi odoo surguulid yabaj čadaxagüybi
348. You can not go to school now.
   či odoo surguulid yabaj čadaxagüyči
349. He/She can not go to school now.
   tər odoo surguulid yabaj čadaxagüy

6.3.2 Past

(1) Simple negation
350. I did not go to school yesterday.
   bi üčügüdür surguulidaa očoogüybi
351. You did not go to school yesterday.
   či üčügüdür surguulidaa očoogüy altay či dəə
352. He/She did not go to school yesterday.
   (1) tər üčügüdür surguulidaa očibogüy
   (2) tər üčügüdür surguulidaa očobo ügüy
353. He/She had no money.
   tərənd colkoob baybagüy
(2) Negation of ability
354. I was not able to go to school yesterday.
   bi üčügüdür surguulidaa očij čadabagüybi
355. You were not able to go to school yesterday.
   či üčügüdür surguulidaa očij čadabagüyči
356. He/She was not able to go to school yesterday.
   tər üčügüdür surguulidaa očij čadabagüy

6.4 Negative imperative

357. Do not wear those clothes!
   tər kubcasaa/xubcasaa büü ümus (literally ‘Do not wear that clothes!)
358. Do not eat that apple!
   tər alimiig büü id
359. Do not touch with your hand!
   gar büü kürülči
360. No entry to unauthorized persons! (‘(They) prohibited outsider from coming in.’)
   gadnee kün oroxiig xoriglobo
361. No smoking!
   (1) tamix tataxiig xoribo (literally ‘(We) prohibited (you from) smoking.’)
   (2) tamix büü tatagti (literally ‘Do not smoke please.’)

6.5 Negative polarities

362. He/She can not speak Mongolian at all.
   tər yürəsəə mongoloor yarij čadaxagüy
363. He/She will never go there again.
   tər yaasan č tənd dakin očixogüy axuu
6.6 Interrogative sentences

(1) Yes-No questions
364. Are you a pupil?
   či suraqčiči gü
365. Is he a teacher?
   tər bagsh gü
366. Did you go to school yesterday?
   či üçiqüdür surguulidaa yabasanči gü
367. Did your grandmother come from Russia or China?
   (1) əmbəə oroosoos irdə či gũ asbəl kyatadaas irdə či gü23)
   (2) əmbəə oroosoos irdə gũ şanqaygaas irdə gũ

(2) WH question
368. Who are you?
   či kən či
369. Who is he?
   tər kən
370. When did you come here?
   či kajəə and irəəči
371. How many houses are there in this village?
   ənə tosgond xədən ayl bagyči ny
372. Where did grandfather come from?
   kügšee xaanaas irdə
373. You did not go to school yesterday, did you?
   (1) či üçügüdür surguulidaa yabaagüy bij či
   (2) či üçügüdür surguulidaa yabaagüy altay či dəə
374. Oh, I did not go.
   tiiməə yababagüybi
375. Oh, I did go.
   (1) ügũy yablaa l
   (2) ügũy yablaa ny

23) The /či/ appears two times in this sentence, but its role is unexplainable.
6.7 Quotation

376. I asked, “Did father come?”
   bi aba ɜəə gəj asuugaabi
377. I asked mother if father had come.
   bi ijiigəəsəə aba ɜreb gəj asuugaabi
378. Mother said father had not come yet.
   iji 24) irəəgy bayna gəj kələə
379. I thought, “It would have been nice if father came.”
   bi aabi irəl yamar goyi be gəj bodobobi
380. I thought it would have been nice if father had come.
   bi aabiig irəl goyi axaa gəj bodobobi

7. Special sentences

381. Gansukh sings in Mongolian or Russian.
   gansük moŋgol orosoor duulagči
382. If Gansukh sings, Saraa dances.
   kərbəə/χərbəə gansük duulabal saraa büjigləgči
383. If Tsetsegmaa starts singing, she sings until she finishes.
   cəcəgməa nəŋənt duu duulaj ikləə aasee duustal ny duulagči
384. Although Tsetsegmaa is poor, she is happy.
   (1) cəcəgməa kədee yaduu ɫ aasee jargaltee baygči
   (2) cəcəgməa kədee yaduu aasee jargaltee baygči
385. If you start singing, sing until you finish.
   nəŋənt duu duulaj ikləsən aasee duustal ny duula
386. Sing a song. Or dance a dance.
   duu duula əsbał büjig büjigla

24) In sentences 378-380, the word for ‘father’ is the Khalkha form. See Buryat aба (father, nominative), абыр (father, accusative) and Khalkha aаб (father, nominative), аабыр (father, accusative).
References

Seoul National University 서울대학교인문대학언어학과 (제작), Altai Real Project 팀 (수정), (2007. 6. 15. 몽골어판 제4권), 《언어조사질문지 (몽골지역용)》, 한국학술진흥재단 (후원), 한국알타이학회.


YU 유원수 (2004a), 《몽골비사》, 사계절, 서울.

YU 유원수 (2004b), 《타청 지역 아시 다오르 방언의 모습》, 《2004年度 秋季學術大會 發表要旨》, 1-12, 中央亞細亞學會.

YU 유원수 (2007a), 《서부 부라야트 방언들의 모습》, 《2007 춘계학술발표대회 논문집》, 1-12, 中央亞細亞學會.


YU 유원수 (2008a), 《지형력 없는 어휘: 절멸 위기의 알타이 언어들에 대한 현지 조사 결과를 중심으로》, 《몽골학》 25, 47-69, 한국몽골학회.

YU 유원수 (2008b), 《다고르어 타청 방언의 어휘 구성》, 《2008年度 秋季學術大會 - 中央亞細亞學會 문화의 동서 교류-》, 1-12, 사단법인 中央亞細亞學會.


YU 유원수 (2009c), 《몽골의 언어와 문화》, 서울: 소나무.

YU 유원수 (2010a), 《몽골의 몽골 합니앙 소고: 음운적 특징을 중심으로》, 《중앙아시아학회 추계발표회》, 1-16, 中央亞細亞學會.


International Phonetic Association, The (1999), Handbook of the International


Janhunen, Juha (2005), Khamnigan Mongol, Muenchen: Lincom GmbH.


Kim, Juwon, Dongho Ko, Chaoke D. O., Youfeng Han, Lianyu Piao, B.V. Boldyrev (2008), Materials of Spoken Manchu, Altaic Languages Series 01, Seoul: SNU Press.


Kowalewski, Joseph Étienne (1846), Dictionnaire mongol-russe-françias II, Kasan: Imprimerie De L'université.


Li, Yong-Söng, Hoyoung Lee, Hyong-won Choi, Geonsook Kim, Dongeun Lee, Mehmet Ölmez (2008), A Study of the Middle Chulym dialect of the Chulym languages, Altaic Languages Series 03. Seoul: SNUPress.


References


Амаржаргал Б., Ж. Цолоо, Г. Гантогтох (1988), БНМАУ дахь монгол хэлний аялгууны толь бичиг I: Халх аялгуу, БНМАУ-ын ШУА, Хэл Зохиолын Хурээлэн, Улаанбаатар.

Болд, Л. (Бронхиий редактор) нар (2008), Монгол хэлний дэлгэрэнгүй тайлбар толь, I-V, Шинжлэх Ухааны Академи Хэл Зохиолын Хурээлэн, Улаанбаатар: “Соёмбо принтинг” хэвлэх газар.


Ринчен (1969), Монгол Ард Улсын Хамннгэн Аялгуу, БНМАУ Шинжлэх Ухааны Академи Хэл Зохиолын Хурээлэн, Улаанбаатар хот.


Черемисов, К. М. (1951), Бурят-Монгол-Ород словарь, Москва: Хари ба Национальна Словарнуюдай Гурэнэй Хэвлэн.

A Study of the Mongol Khamnigan Spoken in Northeastern Mongolia

Цэнхэр 7, 30-34, Орхон Их Сургууль.

Abstract

A Study of the Mongol Khamnigan Spoken in Northeastern Mongolia

The Mongolic Languages team of the Altaic Society of Korea, Researches on Endangered Altaic Languages (henceforth ASK REAL) carried out its fieldwork studies 29 times on certain Mongolic languages, including Mongol Khamnigan, and their dialects from September 2003 to February 2009. This book is the second fieldwork report and a linguistic description of an endangered Mongolic language by the Mongolic Languages team of ASK REAL, and the most extensive report written in English in the world on Mongol Khamnigan up until now.

This work is composed of four major parts: 1. a general introduction of the Mongol Khamnigan people and their language, 2. a report on the fieldwork studies carried out in Khentii aimag, Mongolia, 3. linguistic descriptions of Mongol Khamnigan, and 4. the appendix.

In the first chapter, the Khamnigan people in Mongolia, China, and Russia are introduced.

In the second chapter of this work, which is a general description of the fieldwork studies done in Binder and Dadal sums, Khentii aimag, Mongolia, we report on our trip to Khentii aimag, the reliable people who worked with us, and our consultants, who were eager to help us.

The third chapter of this work presents the phonological,
morphological, and syntactic features of the Mongol Khamnigan spoken in this region. In the section on phonology, 17 vowels (six short vowels: /a/, /o/, /u/, /ə/, /ü/, and /i/; seven long vowels: /aa/, /oo/, /uu/, /əə/, /üü/, /ee/, and /ii/; and four diphthongs: /ay/, /oy, /uy/, and /üy/) and 20 consonants (labial consonants: /b/, /p/, /w/, and /m/; dental-alveolar consonants: /d/, /t/, /n/, /r/, and /l(ɾ)/; alveolar consonants: /j/, /c/, and /s/; alveolar-palatal consonants: /ʃ/, /ʃ/; palatal consonant: /y/; and velar consonants: /g/, /k/, /x/, and /ŋ/) are tentatively proposed as the phonemes.

In the section on morphology, features pertinent to the nouns (number, case, reflexive and possessive suffixes), adjectives, numerals (numerals in attribute and cardinal forms, ordinal numerals, collective numerals, distributive numerals, approximate numerals, fractions, multiple numerals, pseudo-numeral words), pronouns (personal, possessive, reflexive, demonstrative, interrogative, indefinite), verbs (finite and non-finite forms, verbal nouns), adverbs, postpositions, particles, and interjections are discussed. In the section on syntax, remarks were made on certain important features, such as the word order, finite forms, and conjunctions.

In the appendix, about 2,800 words, 345 conversational expressions, and 386 sentences and constructions were presented in phonemic transcription with English meanings. The appendix itself would make a contribution both to Altaic Studies and to historical and comparative linguistics.

Key words:
Mongol Khamnigan, Phonology, Morphology, Syntax, Buryat, Khalkha.